

PA 2087

.B92

1906

Copy 1



Class PA2087

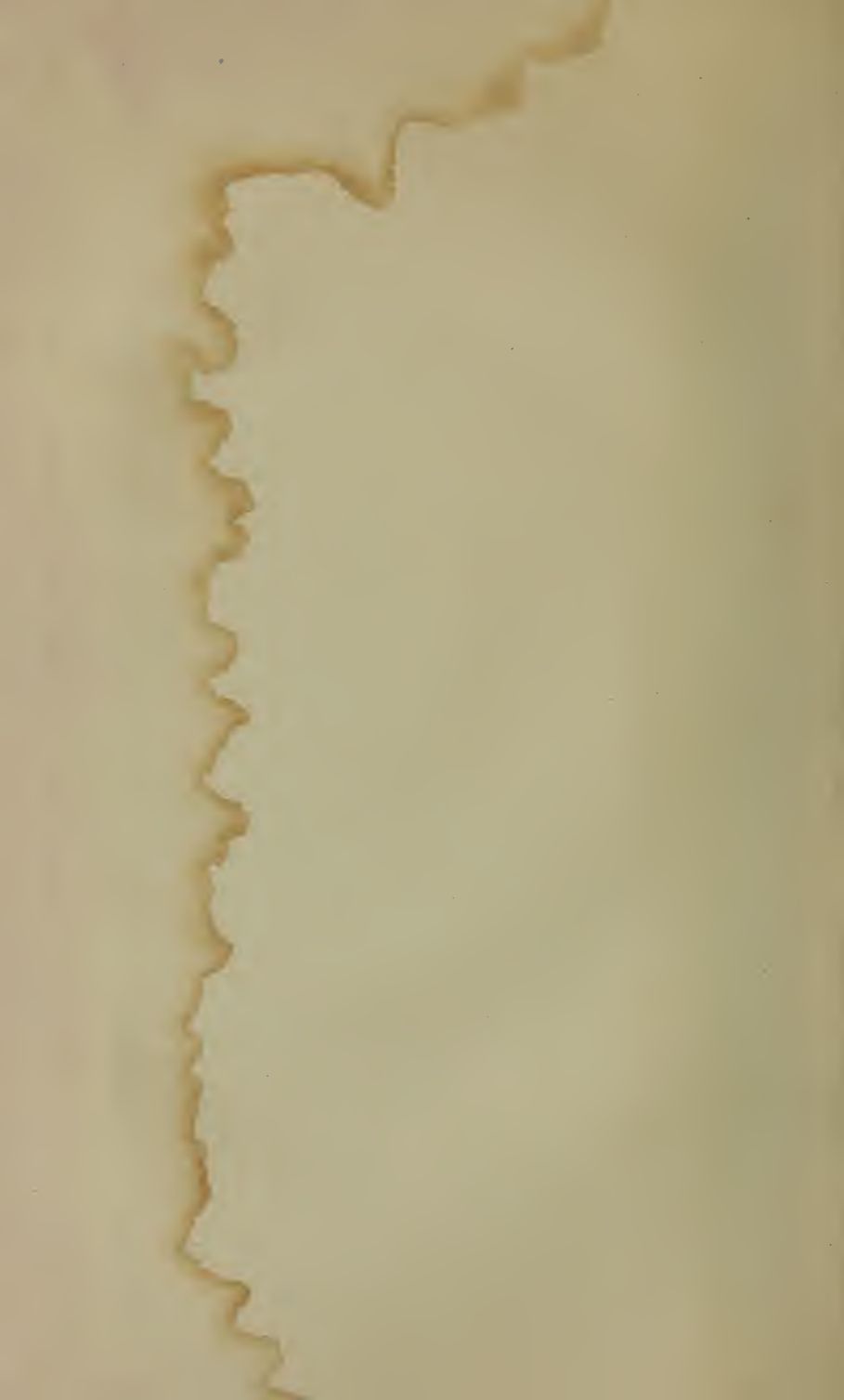
Book B92

1906

Copyright N^o

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.





A
LATIN GRAMMAR

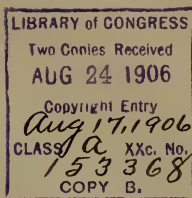
FOR
SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

FOR PRIVATE CIRCULATION

Frederick C. [unclear]

BUFFALO, N. Y.

PA 2087
B92
1906



COPYRIGHT, 1906,
BY
CHARLES JOSEPH WEBER
BUFFALO, N. Y.
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PREFACE

This grammar does not aim to be a text-book of advanced Latin philology, but a **practical guide** in a systematic study of the Latin language.

A practical definition of "**stem**" was preferred to a scientific one.

The **order of cases**—Nominative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative—will, it is expected, enable the student to both understand and memorize the paradigms more easily than in the accustomed order.

Instead of the Vocative which, properly, is no case, the "**Form of Address**" has been introduced.

The short **Rules of Gender** etc., while omitting such exceptions as burden the memory most unprofitably, include everything needed for reading the school-authors.

In the list of verbs the **Infinitive**, as the most important verbal form, (pointing out the conjugation and, excepting the verbs in *io-ere*, the Present-stem,) has been placed first among the principal parts; the verbs are accompanied, throughout the list, by short examples, illustrative of their construction.

The remarks on **pronunciation** are intended to give a fairly correct idea of and to aid in acquiring that pronunciation of Latin which was in use at the time of the classical Latin authors. (As this pronunciation alone can be an unchangeable standard of pronouncing Latin, it should, for the great advantage of uniformity, be adopted by all.)

Almost everything printed in smaller type, or as notes, may be reserved for a second perusal of the book.

"Hidden quantity" questioned by scholars, as e. g. in most cases of vowels before *gn* and *gm*, has not been marked.

May, 1906.

Part I : PHONOLOGY

1. CHARACTERS

The Latin language contains the following characters:

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.
a b c d e f g h i k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

It does not contain : j, w.

Capitals are used only:

1. for the first letter of a sentence;
2. for the first letter of a Proper Name: Graecia;
3. for the first letter of adjectives and adverbs derived from Proper Names: linguā Graecā, Graecē loquī.

2. SOUNDS

| Cōnsonantēs | Labi- ālēs | Guttu- rālēs | Den- tālēs | Lin- guālēs | Palā tālīs. |
|----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| Mūtae tenuēs (hard) | p | c, k, q | t | | |
| “ mediae (soft) | b | g | d | | |
| “ aspirātae (fol- lowed by h) | ph | ch | th | | |
| Sēmivocālēs liquidae | | | | l, r | |
| “ nāsālēs | m | ng | n | | |
| “ spīrantēs | f, v | (h) | s, z | | i = j |
| Vocālēs | a, e, i, o, u, y | | | | |
| Cōnsonāns duplex | x = (cs, or gs.) | | | | |
| Diphthongi: vocālēs duplicēs | ae, oe, au, eu. | | | | |

3. APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION

The following list contains the main points of that pronunciation of Latin which was in use at the time of the classical Latin authors.

| | | |
|----------------------------|-----|---|
| ā | a | as in father, fatigue |
| ē | e | as in obey, bet : see note 1. |
| ī | i | as in fatigue, fit |
| ō | o | as in holy, obey : see note 1. |
| ū | u | as in rude, put |
| y | | like German ü : see note 2. |
| ae | oe | } pronounce both elements of these diphthongs in the same breath-impulse : see notes 3 and 4. |
| au | eu | |
| b, d, f, l, m, n, p, q, | | } as in English |
| c and k | | as in cat, kin |
| g | | as in get |
| h | | a sign of aspiration, no letter : see note 6. |
| r | | trilled with the tip of the tongue |
| s | | as in see |
| t | | as in tit |
| z | | like a lisped soft s. |
| consonant i | | like y in yet : see notes 10 and 11. |
| consonant v | | like w in win : see note 12. |
| bs | bt | like ps, pt |
| x (=cs, gs) | | as in extra; not soft as in exact |
| nc, nq; ng | | like nk and ng in rank, rang |
| n before s | | is not pronounced, but lengthens and nasalizes the preceding vowel: cōsul, cēnsor are pronounced cōsul, cēsor |
| qu | ngu | as is quick, sanguine |
| su | | like sw; (in suādeō, -suēscō, suāvis) |

4. *Notes.*

1. The Latin vowels and diphthongs are pure, without the vanishing sound of some English vowels.
2. The vowel *y* occurs in foreign words only : *syllaba*, syllable.
3. The *e*-element in *ae* and *oe* seems to have been more pronounced at the time of Cicero than the preceding *a* and *o*; the diphthongal pronunciation of *ae* and *oe* was gradually becoming monophthongal, the *a*- and *o*-sounds disappearing.
4. The diphthong *eu* is found in foreign words and in some interjections : *Eurōpa*, Europe; *heu*, alas.
eu in *neuter*, neither of the two, and in *neutiquam*, by no means, is no diphthong : *né-u-ter*, *ne-ú-ti-quam*.
5. The sign of diaeresis (¨) distinguishes *äe* and *öe* as two separate vowels each from the diphthongs *ae* and *oe*.
äer, air; *aes*, brass; *poëta*, poet; *foedus*, league.
6. The Latin *h*, generally, was not an independent sound or letter, as our *h*; it was a sign of aspiration (*nota aspiratiōnis*), intended to denote that the vowel following it should be uttered with a stronger aspiration than other vowels, or that *c*, *p*, *t* in *ch*, *ph*, *th* should be aspirated (followed by or joined with a breath-element). By careful speakers, especially on the stage, this *h* was, indeed, expressed; sometimes, even as an independent sound; as a rule, however, it was neglected; hence the variation in spelling:
 harēna or *arēna*; have or ave.
In some words it was a mere sign of diaeresis:
 ahēnus or *aēnus*.
7. Doubled consonants must be distinctly separated.
 annus = *an-nus*, year; *anus* = *a-nus*, old woman.
8. *K* is rare : *Kalendae*, *Kaeso*, *Karthägō* = *Carthägō*.
9. *Z* occurs in foreign words only : *Zama*, *Zephyrus*.
10. *I* is both a vowel and a consonant; it is a consonant,
 a) when it stands at the beginning of a word before a vowel: *iūs*; *b*) between two vowels: *māior*, *iēiūnus*.
 In Greek words *i* always is a vowel: *Iōnēs* = *I-ō-nēs*.
11. Instead of *ii* only one *i* is written :
 a) in the compounds of *iaciō* :
 e. g. write *abicio*, but pronounce *abyikiō*.
 b) in the declension of words in *āius*, *ēius*, *ōius* :
 e. g. write *Grāi*, *Grāis*, *Vēi*, *Bōi*, but pronounce *Grayi*.....
12. Also *v* denoted both a vowel and a consonant; now, when a vowel, it is usually written *u*.

5.

SYLLABLES

A word has as many syllables as it contains vowels and diphthongs:

ae-ris, 2 syllables; ā-ē-ris, 3 syllables

6. Separation of syllables in writing:

a. Of consonants occurring between two vowels the following go with the second:

1. Single consonants : su-pe-rī, pē-ius, dī-vi-dō

2. gu, qu : san-guis, se-quer

3. Combinations of p, c, t, (b, g, d) with l, r:

qua-dru-plus, a-la-cris; but: Al-pēs, ar-gu-ō

4. The second of doubled consonants : an-nus, sic-cus

b. Other combinations of consonants may be separated as follows:

cas-tra or ca-stra; mōns-trum or mōn-strum

sānc-tus or sān-ctus; rēx-ī or rē-xī

c. Compound words usually divide into their parts:

ab-rogo; post-ea; prōd-est; ex-trahō

d. In ordinary speech, however, we separate:

ab-rogo; pos-teā; prō-dest; ex-trahō

7. Quantity of syllables:

a. The quantity of syllables is the relative time taken in sounding them, a long syllable requiring about twice the time of a short one.

b. A long syllable may be long by nature or by position; it is long by nature, if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel:
foe - dus, fī - dus.

Note: Long vowels are usually marked: ā, ē, ī, ō, ū;
short vowels are not marked: a, e, i, o, u.

A syllable is long by position, if its vowel is followed, in the same word, by two consonants, except p, c, t, (b, g, d) or l, r; qu being considered as a simple consonant: thus in the words an-nus, dux: x=cs, cōn-co-quō, the syllables an, dux, con are long by position.

Note: Vowels before nf, ns, nx, nct are long (by nature),
vowels before nt, nd are short:

īnfāns, sānxī, sānctus; but īnfantis, laudandus.

8.

ACCENT

- a. In words of two syllables the accent is on the first:
 infāns, éō, séquor.
- b. In words of more than two syllables, the accent is on the
 paenultima (next to the last), if that is long:
 infāntis, collaúdās;
 on the antepaenultima (second from the last), if
 the paenultima is short:
 sūperī, quádruplus, mediócris.
- Note:* Words with appended que, ve, ne, as well as Greek
 words follow the same rules:
 útraque, tríave, tíbine;
 Iónes, Eúmenes, philosóphia, Academía.
- c. *Exceptions:*
1. Compounds of facio which keep the a of facio, retain
 also the accent on facio: benefácis, calefácit; but:
 réfícis.
 2. Words which have lost a final vowel after a long
 penult, keep the accent in its former place:
 ēdúc, illíc from ēdūce, illice.
 3. Genitives and forms of address of substantives in ius
 and ium: Vergíli, ingénī.

Part II : INFLECTION

9.

Nouns: {substantives, adjectives, } are inflected by declension
 {numerals, pronouns }

Verbs: are inflected by conjugation.

Particles: {adverbs, prepositions, } are not inflected.
 {conjunctions, interjections }

10. DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Declension is that inflection which indicates gender, number and case.

11. GENDERS

The genders of nouns are determined by general and particular rules.

The particular rules (stated in the single declensions) are applied only, when the general rules cannot decide the gender.

12. GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

1. **Men and rivers** are masculine (**m.**): masculīna.
2. **Women and trees** are feminine (**f.**): fēminīna.
3. **Indeclinables** are neuter (**n.**): néutra.
4. Nouns denoting **either sex** are common (**c.**): commūnia.

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| Genus masculīnum; | genus neutrum: neither m. nor f. |
| genus fēminīnum; | genus commūne: either m. or f. |

Examples.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. Nauta, ae, m., sailor | Persa, ae, m., Persian |
| Tiberis, is, m., the Tiber | Albis, is, m., the Elbe |
| 2. pōpulus, ī, f., poplar | īlex, icis, f., holmoak |
| quercus, ūs, f, oak | soror, ōris, f., sister. |
| 3. fās, n., divine right | valē, n., farewell |
| Also phrases, clauses, quotations etc., are neuter. | |
| 4. parēns, entis, c. (i. e., m. and f.) father or mother | |
| infāns, antis, c., child (boy or girl) | |
| comes, itis, c., companion (male or female) | |

13. *Note.* Some names of men and animals have a masculine and a feminine ending (*substantīva mōbilia*):

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| fīlius, ī, m., son | fīlia, ae, f., daughter |
| nepōs, ōtis, m., grandson | neptis, is, f., granddaughter |
| puer, ī, m., boy | puella, ae, f., girl |
| victor, ōris, m., conqueror | victrix, icis, f., conqueror |
| rēx, rēgis, m., king | rēgīna, ae, f., queen |
| gallus, ī, m., cock | gallīna, ae, f., hen |

14. *Exceptions:*

to 1: *a*; *Collective nouns* follow the particular rules of gender (11.):

cōpiaē, ārum, f., troops auxilia, ōrum, n., auxiliaries
 operae, ārum, f., workmen manus, ūs, f., troop

b. mancipium, ī, n., slave, (chattel)

c. Elaver, eris, n., Allier (river in Gaul); Allia, ae, f., Allia (river near Rome)

Sēquana, ae, m., Seine

Note: Names of rivers in *a* are of variable and uncertain gender.

to 2: acer, aceris, n., maple-tree.

15. NUMBERS

There are two numbers in the Latin declension:

Numerus singulāris, the Singular,

Numerus plūrālis, the Plural.

16.

CASES

Case is that form or use of a noun by which its relation to other words in a sentence is denoted.

There are five cases:

- Nōminātīvus**, answering the question: Who? or what?
Accūsātīvus, answering the question: Whom? or what?
Genetīvus, answering the question: Whose? or of what?
Datīvus, answering the question: To or for whom or what?
Ablātīvus, answering the question: By what means?

Note: The nominative is called *cāsus rēctus*, independent case; the other cases are called *cāsus oblīquī*, dependent cases.

17.

FORM OF ADDRESS

When used to name a person or thing addressed, the noun is in no case, as the address has no relation to any part of a sentence (16); a special form of address, (usually called the Vocative,) is used only for the singular of words in us of the second declension; the nominative serves that purpose for all other words.

18.

TABLE OF DECLENSIONS

| Declension | I. | II. | III. | IV. | V. |
|-----------------|--------|--------|-------|---------|----------|
| Nom. sing.: | mēnsa | servus | lex | fructus | diēs |
| Gen. sing.: | mēnsae | servī | lēgis | fructūs | diēi |
| Stem: | mēns | serv | lēg | fruct | di |
| Ending | | | | | |
| of Gen. sing. } | ae | ī | is | ūs | eī or ēī |

Note: The ending of the Gen. sg. shows to which declension a word belongs.

19. The stem of a noun (substantive or adjective) is found by cutting off the ending of the Gen. sg.

26.

GENDER. (11.14.)

Names of men and rivers are masculine,
All other words in a are feminine.

Perfuga, ae, m., deserter; rēgīna, ae, f., queen
Mosa, ae, m., Maas (Meuse); terra, ae, f., earth, land.

27.

SECOND DECLENSION

| Nomin. sing. -us, -er, -ir; -um. | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|--------------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| Gen. sing. -ī. | | | | |
| Singular | | | Plural | |
| Nom. | serv-us | the (a) slave | serv-ī | (the) slaves |
| Acc. | serv-um | the (a) slave | serv-ōs | (the) slaves |
| Gen. | serv-ī | of the (a) slave | serv-ōrum | of (the) slaves |
| Dat. | serv-ō | to, for the (a) slave | serv-īs | to, for (the) slaves |
| Abl. | ā serv-ō | by the (a) slave | ā serv-is | by (the) slaves |
| Nom. | bell-um | the (a) war | bell-a | (the) wars |
| Acc. | bell-um | the (a) war | bell-a | (the) wars |
| Gen. | bell-ī | of the (a) war | bell-ōrum | of (the) wars |
| Dat. | bell-ō | to, for the (a) war | bell-īs | to, for (the) wars |
| Abl. | bell-ō | by means of the (a) war | bell-īs | by... (the) wars |
| Nom. | liber | the (a) book | libr-ī | (the) books |
| Acc. | libr-um | the (a) book | libr-ōs | (the) books |
| Gen. | libr-ī | of the (a) book | libr-ōrum | of (the) books |
| Dat. | libr-ō | to, for the (a) book | libr-īs | to, for (the) books |
| Abl. | libr-ō | by means of the (a) book | libr-īs | by... (the) books |
| Nom. | puer | the (a) boy | puer-ī | (the) boys |
| Acc. | puer-um | the (a) boy | puer-ōs | (the) boys |
| Gen. | puer-ī | of the (a) boy | puer-ōrum | of (the) boys |
| Dat. | puer-ō | to, for the (a) boy | puer-īs | to, for (the) boys |
| Abl. | ā puer-ō | by the (a) boy | ā puer-is | by (the) boys |

28. There is only one noun in -ir, **vir**, virī, m., *man*:

Sing.: vir, virum, virī, virō, virō

Plur.: virī, virōs, virōrum, virīs, virīs

29. **Like puer** are declined:

1. Substantives in -fer and -ger, as
signifer, -ferī, m., *standard-bearer*; armiger, gerī, m.,
armor-bearer;
2. gener, erī, m., *son-in-law*; vesper, erī, m., *evening*
socer, erī, m., *father-in-law*; Liber, erī, m., *god of wine*
liberī, erōrum, m., *children*.

Like liber, book:

all other substantives of the 2d decl. ending in er, as
ager, agrī, m., *field*; magister, trī, m., *teacher, master*.

30. ADJECTIVES OF THE I. AND II. DECLENSIONS

1. Adjectives in **-us, m., -a, f., -um, n.** } are declined like
as bonus, bona, bonum, *good* } **servus**, mēnsa, bellum
2. Adjectives in **-er, m., -a, f., um, n.** } like
as sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred* } **liber**, mēnsa, bellum;
3. Adj. in **-er, m., era, f., erum, n.** } like
as asper, aspera, asperum, *rough* } **puer**, mēnsa, bellum;

Like asper: a. miser, misera, miserum, *wretched*
tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender, soft*
liber, libera, liberum, *free, independent*

b. Adjectives in **-fer** and **-ger**, as
frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum, *fruitful*
corniger, cornigera, cornigerum, *horned*

4. Dexter, dextra or dextera, dextrum or dexterum, *on the right side*
5. Satur, satura, saturum, *satiated*, is decl. like **vir**, mēnsa, bellum.

Remember: E is kept by

liber, *free*, and liberī, the *children*,
Liber, *Bacchus*; -fer and -ger;
alter, asper, miser, tener,
puer, vesper, socer, gener.

31.

AGREEMENT

The adjectives (both predicative and attributive) must agree with their substantives in **gender, number** and **case**:

mēnsa mea, *my table* hortus tuus, *your garden*
 poēta clārus *a famous poet* populus liber, *a free people*
 puer aeger, *a sick boy* aedificium sacrum, *a sacred bldg.*

| Singular | | | Plural | |
|----------|----------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| Nom. | mēns-a | me-a | mēns-ae | me-āe |
| Acc. | mēns-am | me-am | mens-ās | me-ās |
| Gen. | mēns-ae | me-ae | mēns-ārum | me-ārum |
| Dat. | mēns-ae | me-ae | mēns-īs | mē-īs |
| Abl. | mēns-ā | me-ā | mēns-īs | mē-īs |
| <hr/> | | | | |
| Nom. | poēt-a | clār-us | poēt-ae | clār-ī |
| Acc. | poēt-am | clār-um | poēt-ās | clār-ōs |
| Gen. | poēt-ae | clār-ī | poēt-ārum | clār-ōrum |
| Dat. | poēt-ae | clār-ō | poēt-īs | clār-īs |
| Abl. | ā poēt-ā | clār-ō | ā poēt-īs | clār-īs |

32.

FORM OF ADDRESS (17)

The form of address in the singular **differs** from the nomin. sg. in many cases:

- a. **Substantives in us** have **-e**: servus, serve, *O slave!*
 Darēus, Darēe, *O Darius!*
 but filius, fili, *O son!*

Proper nouns in ius, ēius, āius, have: ī, ēī, āī, as
 Vergilius, Vergilī, *O Virgil!*
 Pompēius, Pompēi, *O Pompey!*
 Gāius, Gāī, *O Gaius!*

- b. **Adjectives in us** have **-e**: bonus, bon-e
 " in **ius** " **-ie**: impius, impi-e
 meus, mea, meum, has: mī, mea, meum

mi fili, *O my son!* poēta impie, *O ungodly poet!*
 mea filia, *O my daughter!* serve piger, *O lazy slave!*

The **gen. sg.** of **proper** (and common) nouns in **-ius**, and **-ium** is often **ī**, instead of **iī**:

Vergīlī = Vergiliū; ingenium, ingēnī = ingeniī, *talents*.

33. Declension of **deus**, deī, m., *god*:

Sing.: deus, deum, deī, deō, ā deō,

Plur.: dī (diī), deōs, deōrum, dīs (diīs) ā dīs (diīs).

Form of address: sg. (not used), pl. dī.

Note: The form of address in Christian writers is **Deus**.

Dī and diīs are pronounced like dī, dīs.

34. GENDER (11, 12.)

Words in **-um** are **néutra**.

-us, -er: masculīna.

Exceptions:

Feminine are **islands, lands** and **towns** in **us**
and **humus**;

Neuter **vīrus, vulgus**.

Corinthus clāra, *famous Corinth*; vīrus mortiferum,
deadly poison; pōpulī altae, *high poplars* (12).

mālus, ī, m., *mast; upright beam* mālus, ī, f., *apple-tree*

populus, ī, m., *people* pōpulus, ī, f., *poplar*

Aegyptius, ī, m., *Egyptian* Aegyptus, ī, f., *Egypt*

Poloponnēsus, ī, f., *Peloponnesus* Cyprus, ī, f., *Cyprus*

Corinthus, ī, f., *Corinth* humus, ī, f., *ground, soil*

mālum, ī, n., *apple* malum, ī, n., *evil, misfortune*

vīrus, ī, n., *poison* vulgus, ī, n., *crowd, rabble*.

vīrus and vulgus form no plural.

35. Note: 1) **Masculine** stay Pontus, Hellēspontus, Isthmus.

2) The gender of islands, lands and towns **not** ending in **us** is determined by their ending (in all declensions):

Saguntum, ī, n., *Sagunt* Leuctra, ōrum, n., *Leuctra*.

Delphī, ōrum., m., *Delphi*.

THIRD DECLENSION (18)

- 36.** A word is **parisyllabic**, if the number of its syllables in the nom. and the gen. sg. is **equal** : pâr;
but **imparisyllabic**, if the number is **unequal** : impâr:

IMPARISYLLABA:

- a) rēx, rēgis, *king* : the stem rēg ends in one consonant : g.
(19.)
b) ars, artis, *art* : the stem art ends in two consonants : rt.

PARISYLLABA:

- c) nūbēs, nūbis, *cloud* : the stem nūb ends in one consonant : b.
d) linter, lintris, *skiff* : the stem lintr ends in three consonants : ntr.

| Masculīna et Fēminīna: | | | | |
|------------------------|---|------------|--|------------------|
| | Imparisyllaba with stems ending in one consonant have: Abl.sg. Acc.pl. Gen.pl. e ēs um | | All other masc. and fem., (see above: b, c, d,) have: Abl.sg. Acc.pl. Gen.pl. e ēs or īs ium | |
| | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
| Nom. | rēx, <i>king</i> | rēg-ēs | ars, <i>art</i> | art-ēs |
| Acc. | rēg-em | rēg-ēs | art-em | art-ēs or art-īs |
| Gen. | rēg-is | rēg-um | art-is | art-ium |
| Dat. | rēg-ī | rēg-ibus | art-ī | art-ibus |
| Abl. | ā rēg-e | ā rēg-ibus | art-e | art-ibus |
| Néutra | | | | |
| | Neuters ending in e, al, ar (with gen. āris) and pâr (with gen. paris): ī ia ium | | All other neuters have: e a um | |
| | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
| Nom. | mar-e, <i>sea</i> | mar-ia | nōmen <i>name</i> | nōmin-a |
| Acc. | mar-e | mar-ia | nōmen | nōmin-a |
| Gen. | mar-is | mar-ium | nōmin-is | nōmin-um |
| Dat. | mar-ī | mar-ibus | nōmin-ī | nōmin-ibus |
| Abl. | mar-ī | mar-ibus | nōmin-e | nōmin-ibus |

37.

IRREGULAR CASE ENDINGS

1. Acc. sg. -im; Abl. sg. ī:
Sitis, puppis, turris,
Febris and secūris,
Cum parisyllabīs
Of streams and towns in is.

2. Abl. sg. -e instead of -ī:
Neuter names of **towns** in e,
As Bibracte and Praeneste.

Note 1: Abl. sg. -ī and -e.
Cīvis, ignis, also nāvis,
Imber and supellex, clāvis.

Note 3: Abl. sg. of rēte is rēte.

3. Gen. pl. -ium
instead of -um:
Faucēs, līs and optimātēs;
Then Quīrītēs and penātes,
With Samnītēs, Arpīnātēs.

4. Gen. pl. -um
instead of -ium:
Senex, pater, also māter;
Canis, iuvenis and frāter.

Note 2: Gen. pl. -um (and -ium)
Mēnsis, cīvitās, parentēs;
Sēdēs, fraus and also vātēs.

Note 4:
Os, ossis, n., bone, has
ossium,
Cor, cordis, n., heart, has
cordium.

sitis, is, im, ī; f., *thirst*
puppis, is, im, ī; f., *stern*
turris, is, im, ī; f., *tower*
febris, is, im, ī; f., *fever*
secūris, is, im, ī; f., *axe*
Tiberis, is, im, ī; m., *Tiber*
Neāpolis, is, im, ī; f., *Naples*
Elis, idis, **em**, e, f., *Elis*.

cīvis, is; c., *citizen*
ignis, is; m., *fire*
nāvis, is; f., *ship*
imber, **bris**; m., *heavy*
rain

supellex, **supellec-**
tilis, f., (plur. not
used), *furni-*
ture

clāvis, is; f., *key*
rēte, is; n., *net*

faucēs, (pl.) ium, f., *throat*
līs, lītis, ium, f., *strife*

optimātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *aristocrats*
Quīrītēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Quirites*
penātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *household*
gods

Samnītēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Samnites*
Arpīnātēs, (pl.) ium, m., *Arpinates*

senex, **senis**, m., *old man*
pater, patris, m., *father*
māter, mātris, f., *mother*
canis, is; c., *dog*
iuvenis, is; m., *(young)*
man
frāter, frātris, m., *brother*

mēnsis, is; m., *month*
cīvitās, ātis, f., *state; citi-*
zenship

parentēs, um; m., *parents*
sēdēs, is; f., *seat*
fraus, **fraudis**, f., *deceit*
vātēs, is; m., *seer; bard*

38.

RULES OF GENDER

(*Vocabulary* : 41 sqq.)

I. MASCULINE are -ō, -or, -er, sōl, sāl.

Exceptions

Feminine are carō, -iō, -dō,
 Arbor, árboris and linter, -go.

Masculine stay pugiō,
 Ordō and septentriō.

Neuter fruits and plants in -er,
 Aequor, marmor, cor and ver,
 Iter, verber(a), cadāver.

II. FEMININE are æ and -x.

Exceptions

Masculine is pēs,
 As and pariēs;
 Dēns and fōns and mōns,
 Lepus, mūs and pōns;
 Collis, orbis, ēnsis,
 Pulvis, lapis, mēnsis;
 Words in -nis, -guis, -cis,
 And in -ex, (icis);
 Grex and words in ōs.—

Feminine: cōs, dōs;

Neuter: aes, vās, ōs,
 -us (with ris) and os.

III. NEUTER are

-e, -al, -ar;
 -ma, -men, caput, fel,
 -ur and lāc and mel.

Masculine stays vultur.

39. Note: Many other words are *masculine* :

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. cardō, inis, <i>hinge</i> | canālis, is, (water) <i>pipe</i> , |
| harpagō, ōnis, <i>grappling</i> | <i>canal</i> |
| <i>hook</i> | caulis, is, <i>cabbage</i> |
| papiliō, ōnis, <i>butterfly</i> | fustis, is, <i>cudgel</i> |
| scīpiō, ōnis, <i>staff</i> | postis, is, <i>post</i> |
| vespertiliō, ōnis, <i>bat</i> | vermis, is, <i>worm</i> |
| 2. ariēs, etis, <i>ram</i> | |
| quadrupēs, edis, <i>quadruped</i> | 4. Names of fractions of 12, |
| caespes, itis, <i>turf, sod</i> | ending in s or x, as: |
| gurgēs, itis, <i>whirlpool</i> | sextāns, antis, <i>two-twelfths</i> |
| stīpes, itis, <i>stock, post</i> | quīncūnx, uncis, <i>five</i> “ |
| glīs, gliris, <i>dormouse</i> | sēmīs, sēmissis, <i>six</i> “ |
| rudēns, entis, <i>rope</i> | bēs, bēsis, <i>eight</i> “ |
| calix, icis, <i>cup</i> | |
| fornix, icis, <i>arch, vault</i> | 5. Words in n (not men) as: |
| 3. axis, is, <i>axle</i> | pecten, inis, <i>comb</i> |
| callis, is, <i>path</i> | rēnēs, um, <i>kidneys</i> |

GENDER OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES

40.

continēns, entis, f., (= continēns terra), *continent, main-*
occidēns, entis, m., (usu. occidens sōl), *West* [land]
oriēns, entis, m., (usu. oriēns sōl), *East*
torrēns, entis, m., (= fluvius torrēns), *torrent*
annālis, is, m., (= liber annālis), *usu. pl.: annals*
Aprīlis, is, m., (usu. mēnsis Aprīlis), *April* .
September, bris, m., (usu. mēnsis September), *September*
(Declension : 51, 52.)

41.

VOCABULARY TO RULES OF GENDER

(See also 37, 39. 40)

RULE FOR MASCULINES

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| aquilō, ōnis, m., <i>northwind</i> | pāvō, ōnis, m., <i>peacock</i> |
| carbō, ōnis, m., <i>coal</i> | pulmō, ōnis, m., <i>lung</i> |
| leō, ōnis, m., <i>lion</i> | sermō, ōnis, m., <i>conversation</i> |
| mucrō, ōnis, m., <i>point of a</i> | Sulmō, ōnis, m., <i>Sulmo</i> (35.) |
| <i>sword</i> | |

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| turbō, | inis, m., <i>whirlwind</i> | testūdō, | inis, f., <i>tortoise,</i> <i>shelter</i> |
| pugiō, | ōnis, m., <i>dagger</i> | | |
| ōrdō, | inis, m., <i>order, series</i> | arbor, árbōris, f., <i>tree</i> | |
| Septentriōnēs, um, m., <i>North</i> | | soror, | ōris, f., <i>sister</i> |
| Vesontiō, | ōnis, m., (exc. to 35) | linter, | tris, f., <i>skiff</i> |
| amor, | ōris, m., <i>love</i> | mulier, | íeris, f., <i>woman</i> |
| color, | ōris, m., <i>color</i> | imāgō, | inis, f., <i>picture</i> |
| dolor, | ōris, m., <i>pain</i> | orīgō, | inis, f., <i>origin</i> |
| agger, | eris, m., <i>mound,</i> <i>dam</i> | acer, | áceris, n., <i>maple-tree</i> (38) |
| sōl, | sōlis, m., <i>sun</i> | papāver, | eris, n., <i>poppy</i> |
| sāl, | salis, m., <i>salt</i> | piper, | eris, n., <i>pepper</i> |
| | | aequor, | oris, n., <i>smooth sea</i> |
| carō, | carnis , f., <i>flesh</i> | marmor, | oris, n., <i>marble</i> |
| mūnitiō, | ōnis, f., <i>intrench-</i> <i>ment</i> | cor, | cordis , n., <i>heart (cor-</i> <i>dium)</i> |
| ratiō, | ōnis, f., <i>reason,</i> <i>plan...</i> | vēr, | veris, n., <i>spring</i> |
| cōnsuētūdō, | inis, f., <i>custom</i> | iter, itineris , n., <i>march,</i> <i>road</i> | |
| | | verbera, | um, n., <i>lashing</i> |
| | | cadāver, | eris, n., <i>corpse</i> |
| ōrdō plēbēius | | | |
| sermō patrius | | | <i>class of the common people</i> |
| carō ferīna | | | <i>mothertongue</i> |
| arbor prōcēra | | | <i>game</i> |
| cadāver cruentum | | | <i>tall tree</i> |
| cor hūmānum | | | <i>bloody corpse</i> |
| | | | <i>human heart</i> |

42.

RULE FOR FEMININES

| | | | |
|-------------|--|----------|------------------------------|
| anas, | atis, f., <i>duck</i> | mercēs, | ēdis, f., <i>reward, pay</i> |
| aetās, | ātis, f., <i>age</i> | quiēs, | ētis, f., <i>rest</i> |
| aestās, | ātis, f., <i>summer</i> | nūbēs, | is, f., <i>cloud</i> |
| crūdēlitās, | ātis, f., <i>cruelty</i> | vulpēs, | is, f., <i>fox</i> |
| gravitās, | ātis, f., <i>heaviness</i> | | |
| levitās, | ātis, f., <i>fickleness,</i> <i>frivolity</i> | auris, | is, f., <i>ear</i> |
| abiēs, | etis, f., <i>fir (12)</i> | avis, | is, f., <i>bird</i> |
| seges, | etis, f., <i>crop</i> | classis, | is, f., <i>fleet, class</i> |
| compedēs, | um, f., <i>shackles</i> | fēlis, | is, f., <i>cat</i> |
| | | vītis, | is, f., <i>vine</i> |

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| cōs, | cōtis, f., <i>hone</i> | gēns, | gentis, f., <i>race, nation</i> |
| dōs, | dōtis, f., <i>dowry</i> | mēns, | mentis, f., <i>mind</i> |
| laus, | laudis, f., <i>praise</i> | frōns, | frontis, f., <i>forehead</i> |
| iuventūs, ūtis, f., <i>youth,</i> | | frōns, | frondis, f., <i>foliage</i> |
| | <i>young men</i> | pars, | partis, f., <i>part</i> |
| salūs, ūtis, f., <i>welfare</i> | | urbs, | urbis, f., <i>city</i> |
| senectūs, ūtis, f., <i>old age</i> | | | |
| servitus, ūtis, f., <i>slavery</i> | | pāx, | pācis, f., <i>peace</i> |
| virtūs, ūtis, f., <i>manly excel-</i> | | lēx, | lēgis, f., <i>law</i> |
| | <i>lence, brav-</i> | nex | necis, f., <i>murder</i> |
| | <i>ery, etc.</i> | nix, | nivis, f., <i>snow</i> |
| palūs, ūdis, f., <i>swamp</i> | | nox, | noctis, f., <i>night</i> |
| pecus, udis, f., <i>single head</i> | | lūx, | lūcis, f., <i>(day) light</i> |
| | <i>of cattle; sheep</i> | | |
| | dux callidus, a | | <i>experienced leader (12)</i> |
| | nāvis longa | | <i>man-of-war</i> |
| | virtūs summa | | <i>perfect manhood</i> |
| | vōx magna | | <i>loud voice</i> |
| 43. | | | |
| pēs, pedis, m., <i>foot</i> | | cinis, cineris, m., <i>ashes</i> | |
| as, assis, m., <i>1. unit of</i> | | | <i>(of a corpse)</i> |
| | <i>money</i> | crīnis, is, m., <i>hair</i> | |
| | <i>2. unit of</i> | fīnis, is, m., <i>boundary</i> | |
| | <i>weight</i> | pānis, is, m., <i>bread</i> | |
| vas, vadis, m., <i>bail</i> | | anguis, is, m., <i>serpent</i> | |
| pariēs, etis, m., <i>wall</i> | | unguis, is, m., <i>nail</i> | |
| dēns, dentis, m., <i>tooth</i> | | | <i>of a finger</i> |
| fōns, fontis, m., <i>fountain,</i> | | | |
| | <i>spring</i> | piscis, is, m., <i>fish</i> | |
| mōns, montis, m., <i>mountain</i> | | hostis, is, m., <i>enemy (in</i> | |
| lepus, oris, m., <i>hare</i> | | | <i>war)</i> |
| mūs, ūris, m., <i>mouse</i> | | codex, icis, m., <i>book, ledger</i> | |
| pōns, pontis, m., <i>bridge</i> | | cortex, icis, m., <i>bark</i> | |
| collis, is, m., <i>hill</i> | | vertex, icis, m., <i>top; whirl</i> | |
| orbis, is, m., <i>circle</i> | | grex, gregis, m., <i>flock</i> | |
| ēnsis, is, m., <i>sword (poet.)</i> | | flōs, flōris, m., <i>flower</i> | |
| pulvis, veris, m., <i>dust</i> | | mōs, mōris, m., <i>manner</i> | |
| lapis, pidis, m., <i>stone</i> | | rōs, rōris, m., <i>dew</i> | |
| | pānis cibārius | | <i>coarse bread</i> |
| | collis arduus | | <i>steep hill</i> |

44.

| | |
|---|--|
| fās, indecl., n., <i>divine right</i> (12) | rūs, rūris, n., <i>country</i> (<i>opp. to city,</i> <i>pl. has n. and</i> <i>acc. only.</i>) |
| nefās, indecl., n., <i>wrong, sin</i> | |
| vās, vāsis, n., <i>vessel</i> (67) | |
| | <i>implement</i> |
| aes, aeris, n., <i>bronze,</i> <i>copper-money</i> | tūs, tūris, n., <i>frank-incense</i> |
| ōs, ōris, n., <i>mouth, face</i> | genus, eris, n., <i>descent; race</i> |
| os, ossis, n., <i>bone</i> (<i>ossium</i>) | latus, eris, n., <i>side, flank</i> |
| crūs crūris, n., <i>leg</i> | vulnus, eris, n., <i>wound</i> |
| iūs, iūris, n., <i>right; justice</i> | corpus, oris, n., <i>body</i> |
| | pecus, oris, n., <i>herd of small</i> <i>cattle</i> |
| | tempus, oris, n., <i>time</i> |

aes aliēnum

debt

ōra dūra

brazen faces

rūs suburbānum

country-seat

45.

RULE FOR NEUTERS

| | |
|--|--|
| conclāve, is, n., <i>room; cage</i> | fulmen, inis, n., <i>striking</i> <i>lightning</i> |
| hastile, is, n., <i>shaft of a spear</i> | |
| animal, ālis, n., <i>living being;</i> <i>beast</i> | lūmen, inis, n., <i>light, lumin-</i> <i>ous object</i> |
| tribūnal, ālis, n., <i>tribunal</i> | caput, capitis , n., <i>head</i> |
| vectigal, ālis, n., <i>tax; rents</i> | fel, fellis , n., <i>gall</i> |
| calcar, āris, n., <i>spur</i> | fulgur, uris, n., <i>flashing</i> <i>lightning</i> |
| fār, farris, n., <i>spelt</i> (<i>farra</i>) | murmur, uris, n., <i>humming;</i> <i>roaring</i> |
| pār, paris, n., <i>pair</i> (<i>paria</i>) | rōbur, oris, n., <i>oakwood,</i> <i>strength</i> |
| poēma, atis, n., <i>poem</i> | Tibur, uris, n., <i>City in</i> <i>Latium</i> |
| agmen, inis, n., <i>army</i> (<i>on the</i> <i>march</i>) | |
| certāmen, inis, n., <i>contest</i> | lāc, lactis , n., <i>milk</i> |
| flūmen, inis, n., <i>river</i> | mel, mellis , n., <i>honey</i> |
| | vultur, uris, m. , <i>vulture</i> |

mare internum

Mediterranean Sea

animālia domestica

domestic animals

flūmina lāta

broad rivers

fulmen sinistrum

favorable lightning

capita cāna

gray heads

46. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

(See *Comparison of Adjectives*, 73.)

FIRST CLASS

Adj. of 3 endings: ācer, ācris, ācre } Abl. sg., N. pl. n., Gen. pl.
 " " 2 endings: brevis, brevis, breve } ī, ia, ium.
 " " 1 ending: fēlīx, fēlīx, fēlīx }

| Singular | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|---------|--------------|----------|--------------|-----------|---------|--|
| | m. | f. | n. | m., f. | n. | m., f. | n. | |
| Nom. | ācer | ācris | ācre | brevis | breve | fēlīx | | |
| Acc. | ācrem | ācrem | ācre | brevem | breve | fēlicem | fēlīx | |
| Gen. | | ācris | | | brevis | | fēlicis | |
| Dat. | | ācrī | | | brevī | | fēlicī | |
| Abl. | | ācrī | | | brevī | | fēlicī | |
| Plural | | | | | | | | |
| | m., f. | n. | m., f. | n. | m., f. | n. | | |
| Nom. | ācrēs | ācria | brevēs | brevia | fēlicēs | fēlicia | | |
| Acc. | ācrēs (-īs) | ācria | brevēs (-īs) | brevia | fēlicēs (īs) | fēlicia | | |
| Gen. | | ācrium | | brevium | | fēlicium | | |
| Dat. | | ācribus | | brevibus | | fēlicibus | | |
| Abl. | | ācribus | | brevibus | | fēlicibus | | |

47. ADJECTIVES OF 3 ENDINGS

| | | |
|---|------------------------------|--|
| ācer, ācris, ācre, | <i>keen</i> | equester, equestris, equestre, |
| ālacer, ālacris, ālacre | <i>lively</i> | <i>equestrian, cavalry-</i> |
| céleber, célebris, célebre, ¹⁾ | <i>much</i> | palūster, palūstris, palūstre, |
| <i>frequented; 2) renowned</i> | | <i>swampy</i> |
| céler, céleris, célere | <i>swift</i> | pedester, pedestris, pedestre, |
| salūber } salūbris } | -bris, -bre <i>wholesome</i> | <i>foot-</i> |
| | | September, Septembris, |
| | | Septembre, <i>of September</i> |
| | | vólucer } vólucris } |
| | | vólucris, vólucere { <i>fly-</i> <i>ing</i> |

(campester), campestris, campestre, *level*.

céleber, celer, pedester;

ālacer, ācer, equester.

48. ADJECTIVES OF 2 ENDINGS

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| brevis, breve, <i>short</i> | lūgubris, bre, <i>mourning</i> |
| dulcis, dulce, <i>sweet</i> | mediocris, cre, <i>middling</i> |
| fortis, forte, <i>strong, manly</i> | suavis, suave, <i>pleasant, sweet</i> |
| illūstris, illūstre, ¹⁾ <i>full of light</i> | silvestris, tre, <i>woody</i> |
| ²⁾ <i>famous</i> | terrestris, tre, <i>land -</i> |

49. ADJECTIVES OF 1 ENDING

| | |
|---|--|
| anceps, ancipitis, <i>doubtful;</i> <i>two-sided</i> | fēlix, icis, <i>lucky, fortunate</i> |
| audāx, audācis, <i>bold</i> | iners, ertis, <i>unskilful; inactive</i> |
| clēmēns, entis, <i>forbearing</i> | locuplēs, ētis, <i>opulent</i> |
| ōrdō equester, | pār, paris, <i>equal</i> |
| orātor mediocris, | <i>order of knights</i> |
| lamentātiō lūgubris, | <i>an ordinary speaker</i> |
| mel dulce, | <i>mourning over the dead</i> |
| proelium anceps, | <i>sweet honey</i> |
| remedia celeria, | <i>a double battle</i> |
| | <i>efficacious remedies</i> |

50. SECOND CLASS

The following adjectives of one ending belong to this class:

1. Prīnceps, compos, pau-
per, dives } Abl. sg., N. and Acc. nt. pl., Gen. pl.
Also particeps, superstes } e wanting, um
2. Memor, inops : ī wanting, um
3. Vetus, : vetere, vetera, veterum

| Singular | | | Plural | |
|----------|---------|-------|-----------|----|
| | m., f. | n. | m., f. | n. |
| Nom. | dīves | dīves | dīvītēs | — |
| Acc. | dīvitem | dīves | dīvītēs | — |
| Gen. | dīvitis | | dīvītum | |
| Dat. | dīviti | | dīvītibus | |
| Abl. | dīvite | | dīvītibus | |

| | |
|--|---|
| prīnceps, cipis, <i>chief</i> | particeps, cipis, <i>sharing</i> |
| compos, potis, <i>master of</i> | superstes, stitis, <i>surviving</i> |
| pauper, peris, <i>not wealthy;</i> <i>of small income</i> | memor, oris, <i>mindful</i> |
| | inops, inopis, <i>without re-</i> <i>sources</i> |
| dīves, vitis, <i>rich</i> | vetus, veteris, <i>old</i> |

51. Note 1: Adjectives in **is** and **er**, used as appellatives or as names of months are declined like adjectives: Abl. sg. **ī**:

| | |
|--|---|
| aequālis, is, m., <i>contemporary</i> | cōsulāris, is, m., <i>ex-consul</i> |
| affīnis, is, c., <i>relation by marriage</i> | familiāris, is, c., <i>friend, intimate</i> |
| annālis, is, m., (usu. pl.), <i>annals</i> | nātālis, is, m., <i>birthday</i> |
| Athēniēnsis, is, m-, <i>Athenian</i> | sodālis, is, m., <i>comrade</i> |
| Aprīlis, is, m., <i>April</i> (40) | September, bris, m., <i>September</i> |

Abl.: aequālī, nātālī, Septembrī.

Note 2: Adjectives used as **proper names** have **e** in the abl. sg.:

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| Martiālis, ā Martiāle; | Fēlix, cum Fēlice |
| Metellus Celer, | ā Metellō Celere |

Note 3: Adjectives in **ās**, **ātis**, and **īs**, **ītis**, have **e**, when denoting persons; **ī**, when denoting things:

in Arpīnātī (fundō), *on the estate in Arpinum*;
ab Arpīnāte (homine), *by an inhabitant of Arpinum*.

52. DECLENSIONS OF PARTICIPLES IN NS

Abl. sg. $\left. \begin{smallmatrix} e \\ i \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$; Nom. pl. neut. **ia**; Gen. pl. **ium**.

When used as adjectives, participles in ns have **ī** in the abl. sg.

“ “ “ participles or substantives, they have **e** in the abl. sg.

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| ā milite vigilantī, | <i>by a watchful soldier</i> |
| milite vigilante, | <i>while the soldier was watching;</i> |
| ā sapientī sene, | <i>by a discreet old man,</i> |
| ā sapiente, | <i>by a judicious person.</i> |

53. FOURTH DECLENSION

| fructus, ūs, m., fruit: | | | cornū, ūs, n., horn: | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------------|-------------|
| | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
| Nom. | fruct - us | fruct - ūs | corn - ū | corn - ua |
| Acc. | fruct - um | fruct - ūs | corn - ū | corn - ua |
| Gen. | fruct - ūs | fruct - uum | corn - ūs | corn - uum |
| Dat. | fruct - uī, (ū) | fruct - ibus | corn - ū | corn - ibus |
| Abl. | fruct - ū | fruct - ibus | corn - ū | corn - ibus |

54. **Ubus**, instead of *ibus*, is taken by
artus, ūs, joint, (pl.: limbs,) and *tribus, ūs, tribe:*
artubus, tribubus.

The same ending is occasionally found in other words, as in
lacus, ūs, lake; portus, ūs, harbor.
lacibus and lacubus.

Distinguish *arcibus* from *arcubus*:
arx, arcis, f., stronghold; arcus, ūs, m., bow.

55. **Domus**, *ūs, house*, has forms of both the 4th and 2d declensions:

Sing.: *domus, domum, domūs, domuī domō*

Plur.: *domūs, domōs, domuum, domibus, domibus*
domī, at home (Locative)
domum, home, homeward
domō, from home.

56. **GENDER**

-us is masculine; -u is neuter.

Exceptions

Fēminīna are in **us**

Idūs, tribus, porticus;

Acus, domus, manus.

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>artus, ūs, m., joint, (pl. limbs)</i> | <i>lacus, ūs, m., lake</i> |
| <i>exercitus, ūs, m., (disciplined)</i> | <i>portus, ūs, m., harbor</i> |
| <i>army</i> | |
| <i>fructus, ūs, m., fruit</i> | <i>sēnsus, ūs, m., feeling; tact</i> |
| <i>quercus, ūs, f., oak (12)</i> | <i>nurus, ūs, f., daughter-in-law</i> |
| <i>anus, ūs, f., old woman</i> | <i>socrus, ūs, f., mother-in-law</i> |
| <i>acus, ūs, f., needle</i> | <i>manus, ūs, f., hand</i> |
| <i>domus, ūs, f., house</i> | <i>porticus, ūs, f., collonade</i> |
| <i>īdūs, uum, f., Ides (13th or</i> | <i>tribus, ūs, f., tribe</i> |
| <i>15th of the month)</i> | |
| <i>cornū, ūs, n., horn</i> | <i>genū, ūs, n., knee</i> |
| <i>portus celebr,</i> | <i>much-frequented harbor</i> |
| <i>vīsus ācer,</i> | <i>keen sight</i> |
| <i>domus ampla,</i> | <i>spacious house</i> |
| <i>tribus rūstica,</i> | <i>country-tribe</i> |
| <i>īdūs Martiae,</i> | <i>Ides of March</i> |
| <i>genū sinistrum</i> | <i>the left knee</i> |

57.

FIFTH DECLENSION

| diēs, diēī, m., <i>day</i> | | | rēs, reī, f., <i>thing</i> | |
|----------------------------|----------|---------|----------------------------|--------|
| | Singular | Plural | Singular | Plural |
| Nom. | di-ēs | di-ēs | r-ēs | r-ēs |
| Acc. | di-em | di-ēs | r-em | r-ēs |
| Gen. | di-ēī | di-ērum | r-eī | r-ērum |
| Dat. | di-ēī | di-ēbus | r-eī | r-ēbus |
| Abl. | di-ē | di-ēbus | r-ē | r-ēbus |

58. Fidēs, spēs, rēs have ēī: fīdeī, speī, reī;
the rest have ēī: perniciēī, speciēī, aciēī, faciēī etc.

Note: a. Only diēs and rēs form a *complete* plural.

Speciēs forms the nom. and acc. plural.

b. The other cases of the plural are supplied by synonyms:

Plur.: speciēs, speciēs, formārum, formīs, formīs.

59.

GENDER

ēs of the fifth is feminine.

Exceptions:

Masculine are diēs, day,

and meridiēs, midday;

Diēs, an appointed day,

Feminine does mostly stay.

aciēs, ēī, f., *keenness*, speciēs, ēī, f., *outward appearance*
battle-array

facies, ēī, f., *face*, fidēs, ēī, f., *trust*,
appearance *faithfulness*

perniciēs, ēī, f., *ruin, bane* spes, ēī, f., *hope*

diēs festus *feast-day*

diēs dicta, cōstitutā *appointed day*

NOMINA DEFECTIVA

60. Indēclinābīlia: Indeclinable words (12;44)
māne, *morning* | instar, *like; as much as* (gen.)
frūgī, *honest* | nēquam, *naughty*

homō frūgī, *an honest man*

epistula volūminis instar.

64. Other defective substantives

a. Sg.: { — diciōnem, ōnis, ōnī, ōne, f., *sway* } : no pl.
 { fors, — — — forte, f., *chance* }

b. Sg.: { — opem, opis, — ope, f., *help*
 { — — — — prece. f., *prayer; request*
 { vīs, vim, — — vī, f., *violence; power*

Pl. { opēs, opum, opibus, *riches; influence*
 { precēs, precum, precibus, *prayers*
 { vīrēs, vīrium, viribus, *forces; strength*

c. Some substantives form the abl. sg. only:

iussū imperātōris, *by command of the leader*

iniussū meō, *without my order*

meā, tuā, suā (refl.) } spon̄te, *of my, your, his, etc. free will*
 nostrā, vestrā }

grandis nātū, *advanced in age*

65. SUBSTANTIVA ABUNDANTIA

(Substantives abounding in forms)

I. a. luxuria = luxuriēs, luxuriam = luxuriem, f., *riotous living*
 māteria = māteriēs, māteriam = materiem, f., *building material*

b. The old gen. sg. in ās is sometimes used instead of ae:
 pater familiās or pater familiae, *head of the household*
 māter familiās or māter familiae, *mistress of the house*

c. The old dat. and abl. plur. -ābus, instead of īs, in the expressions:

dīs et deābus | *to the gods and goddesses*

filiīs et filiābus | *to the sons and daughters*

Note: When ambiguity is excluded, the dat. and abl. pl. are dīs, filiīs: ambābus dīs, filiīs.

66. II. a. The gen. pl. often has **um** instead of ōrum in words denoting money and measure, in the compounds of vir and in other words:

nummus, ī, m., *coin* sestertius, ī, m., *sesterce (silver-*
 modius, ī, m., *peck* *coin of about 5c)*

duumvir, ī, m., *one of the* triumvir, ī, m., } *one of the*
 Board of two decemvir, ī, m., } *Board of 3, 10*

sestertium decem mīlia *ten thousand sesterces*

decemvirum potestas *the authority of the College of Ten*

praefectus fabrum *leader of workmen-troops*

liberum = liberōrum; deum = deōrum.

- b. **Sing.:** iūgerum, iūgerī, iūgerō, n., *acre*
Plur.: iūgera, iūgerum, iūgeribus, n., *acres*
- c. locus, ī, m., *place* pl.: locī, m., and loca, ōrum, n.
 locī, passages in books, grounds of proof
 locī aprīcī, **sunny spots** : *single places*
 loca haec, ea, illa, **regions** : *connected places*
- d. iocus, ī, m., *joke* pl.: iocī or ioca
- e. vesper, ī, m., *evening* {ad vesperum} *until evening*
 {ad vesperam}
67. III. a. plēbs, plēbis, f., *com-*
mon people= plēbēs, plēbeī or plēbī :
 plēbī scītum, *decree of the people*
 plēbī tribūnus, *defender of the people's cause*
- b. requiēs, ētis, f., *rest*
 requiētem = *requiem* requiēte = *requiē*
- c. **Sing.:** vās, vāsis, vāsī, n., *vessel*
Plur.: vāsa, vāsōrum, vāsīs, n., *vessels; military baggage*

68. PARTICULAR SUBSTANTIVES

- bōs, bovis, c., *ox, cow* : bovēs, boum, bōbus-būbus
 grūs, gruis, c., *crane* : gruēs, gruum, gruibus
 sūs, suis c., *swine* : suēs, suum, suibus-sūbus
 Aniō, Aniēnis, m., : *tributary of the Tiber*
 Iuppiter, Iovis, m., (from Iov-pater), *Juppiter*

69. DECLENSION OF GREEK WORDS

Pronunciation : Greek words are pronounced like Latin words, except that **i** always is vowel (4).

Accent : Greek words are accented according to the same laws as Latin words (8).

Gender : The gender of Greek words remains the same in Latin as it is in Greek.

Declension : Greek words usually take Latin forms :

- bibliothēca, ae, f., *library* diphthōngus, ī, f., *diphthong*
 grammatica, ae, f., *philology* periodus, ī, f., *a complete sentence*
 poëta, ae, m., *poet* pelagus, ī, n., *sea*

GREEK FORMS

70.

FIRST DECLENSION

Nom. -ē, f.; -ās and -ēs, m.

| | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----|-------|-----|-----|-----|---------------------|
| Antigonē, | am, | ae, | ae, | ā, | f., | <i>Antigone</i> |
| Aenēās, | am, | ae, | ae, | ā, | m., | <i>Aeneas</i> |
| Spartiātēs, | am, | ae, | ae, | ā, | m., | <i>the Spartan</i> |
| Spartiātae | ās, | ārum, | īs, | īs, | m., | <i>the Spartans</i> |

Note: Also other forms occur.

71.

SECOND DECLENSION

Nom. sg. -eus, m.; form of address -eu

Orpheus, eum, eī, eō, eō; m., *Orpheus*(The **eu** in the nom. and in the form of address is a diphthong.)

72.

THIRD DECLENSION

Nom. sg. -ēs, m.; -is, (parisyll.) f.; -ma, n.

a. Periclēs em=ēn, is=ī, ī, e, m., *Pericles*

Form of address: Pericles = Periclē

basis, im(-in), is, ī, ī, f., *pedestal*poēma, ma, matis, matī, mate, n., *poem*poēmata, mata, {matorum poematīs, n., *poems*
matumb. āēr, āēris, m., *air* : acc.: āēraaethēr, aetheris, m., *ether* : acc.: aethera

VOCABLES

Penelopē, ae, f., *Penelope* Persēs, ae, m., *Persian*Note: All **patronymics** in dēs have **ae**:Atridēs, ae, m., *scion of Atreus*Aristidēs, is m., *Aristides* poēsis, is, f., *work of poetry*epigramma, atis, n., ¹⁾ *inscription*, ²⁾ *epigram*Note: *Proper Nouns* in is, ys, as, like those in eus, es, drop the s in their form of address:

Alexis, Alexi; Cotys, Coty; Atlas, Atla, (Gen. Atlantis)

Names of nations often take es and as (instead of ēs)

Nom. pl.: Arcades, Acc. pl.: Arcadas

Macédones Macédonas

73. COMPARISON

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison (*gradūs comparātiōnis*),

the Positive, Comparative and Superlative
positīvus, comparātīvus, superlātīvus.

74. The Comparative is formed by adding
ior (m. and f.) and **ius** (n.)
the Superlative, by adding
issimus, -a, -um, to the stem (19).

| | | |
|----------------------------|--|---|
| sevērus, severe; | sevēr- ior , 1) more severe, 2) too severe; | sevēr- issimus 1) most severe 2) very severe |
| levis, e, <i>light</i> ; | lev- ior ; | lev- issimus |
| tenuis, e, <i>thin</i> ; | tenu- ior ; | tenu- issimus |
| loquāx, <i>talkative</i> ; | loquāc- ior ; | loquāc- issimus |

75. Also **participles** when used as **adjectives**:

| | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| vigilāns, <i>watchful</i> ; | vigilant- ior ; | vigilant- issimus |
| egēns, <i>poor</i> ; | egent- ior ; | egent- issimus |
| ōrnātus <i>adorned</i> ; | ōrnāt- ior ; | ōrnāt- issimus |

76. Note: aethēr tenuior est **quam** āēr,
the ether is thinner than the air;
senectūs loquāc**ior** est; *old age is rather talkative.*

77. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE (46, 50)

The Abl. sg. ends in **e**;
the Nom. Neut. pl. ends in **a**;
the Gen. pl. ends in **um**.

| Singular | | | Plural | |
|----------|------------|----------|--------------|-----------|
| | m. and f. | n. | m, and f. | n, |
| Nom. | sevērior, | sevērius | sevērīōrēs, | severiōra |
| Acc. | sevērīōrem | sevērius | sevērīōrēs, | sevērīōra |
| Gen. | sevērīōris | | sevērīōrum | |
| Dat. | sevērīōrī | | sevērīōribus | |
| Abl. | sevērīōre | | sevērīōribus | |

PECULIARITIES

78. Adjectives in **er** form their Superlative by adding **rimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the **nom. sg. m.**:

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| pulcher, <i>beautiful</i> ; | pulchr-ior, | pulcher - rimus |
| liber, <i>free</i> ; | liber-ior, | liber - rimus |
| ācer, <i>keen</i> ; | ācr-ior, | ācer - rimus |
| celer, <i>swift</i> ; | celer-ior, | celer - rimus |

79. Adjectives in **ilis** form their Superlative **variously**:
Five form it regularly in **issimus**, **-a**, **-um**:

fertilis, ūtilis, mōbilis,
 amābilis and nōbilis;
fertile, useful, movable,
amiable, noble.

80. **Five** adjectives change **ilis** into **illimus**:

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| facilis, <i>easy</i> , | difficilis, <i>difficult</i> , |
| similis, <i>like</i> , | dissimilis, <i>unlike</i> , |
| and humilis: | and <i>low</i> . |

facillimus, simillimus, humillimus.

Note: The other adjectives in **ilis** usually form no superlative in **issimus** (82).

81. Adjectives in **us** with **preceding vowel** form their degrees by means of **magis** and **maximē**:

| | | |
|---|--------------------|------------------------|
| idōneus, <i>fit</i> , | magis idōneus, | maximē idōneus |
| pious, <i>pious</i> , | magis pius, | maximē pius |
| arduus, <i>steep, hard</i> , | magis arduus, | maximē arduus |
| but aequus , <i>fair, just</i> , | aequior , | aequissimus (7) |
| antīquus , <i>ancient</i> , | antīquior , | antīquissimus |

82. *Note:* Adjectives whose comparatives or superlatives are not used, and adjectives with unusual endings, may take **magis** and **maximē** (89):

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| a. laudābilis, | { laudābrior, | magis laudābilis, maximē laud. (80, Note) |
| praiseworthy, | { | |
| alacer, <i>lively</i> , | { alacrior, | magis alacer, maximē alacer |
| | { | |
| b. hospitālis, <i>hospitable</i> , | { hospitālissimus | magis hospitālis { maximē hospitālis |
| | { | |
| c. rudis, <i>unwrought</i> , | magis rudis, | maximē rudis |
| d. sēdulus, <i>diligent</i> , | magis sēdulus, | maximē sēdulus |

ANOMALA: IRREGULAR FORMATIONS

83. Adjectives in **dicus, ficus, volus** (=dicēns, faciēns, volēns).
 maledicus, *slanderous*, maledic-**entior**, maledic-**entissimus**
 magnificus, *magnificent*, magnific-entior, magnific-entissimus
 benevolus, *benevolent*, benevol-entior, benevol-entissimus

84. bonus, *good*; melior, optimus
 malus, *bad*; pēior, pessimus
 magnus, *great*; māior, maximus
 parvus *small*; minor, minimus

85. **Sing.:** multus, *much*; no compar., plūrimus
 multa, " no compar., plūrima
 multum, " plūs, plūrimum
Plur.: multī, *many*; plūrēs, plūrimī
 multae, " plūrēs, plūrimae
 multa, " plūra, plūrima

Note: a. The sing. plūs, a larger amount, is a **substantive** only:

plūs pecūniae, *more money*

b. of plūs no other forms than plūs and plūris are used:

plūris hōc faciō, *I esteem this more highly*

c. The genitive of plurēs and plūra is **plurium** (77):

plūrēs, plūra, plurium, *more*
 complūrēs, complūra, complurium, *several*

d. plūrimī = plērīque; **gen. only** plūrimōrum

plūrimae = plēraequē; " " plūrimārum

plūrima = plēraque, " " plūrimōrum

86.

ABUNDANTIA

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| exterior, <i>outer</i> | extrēmus (extimus), <i>outermost</i> |
| inferior, <i>lower</i> | īnimus = īmus, <i>lowermost</i> |
| posterior, <i>next in</i> | postrēmus, <i>hindmost, last</i> |
| <i>order, time, place;</i> | (postumus, <i>lateborn</i>) |
| superior, <i>higher;</i> | summus , <i>highest</i> |
| | (suprēmus, <i>last</i>) |
| | (diēs suprēmus, <i>day of death</i>) |

87. *Note:* The **positive forms** of the preceding adjectives are **rare**:

| | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| exterae nātiōnēs (gentēs) | <i>foreign nations</i> |
| īnferī, <i>those below</i> | apud īnferōs <i>in the infernal regions</i> |
| mare īnferum, <i>Tyrrhene Sea</i> | mare superum, <i>Adriatic Sea</i> |
| posterī, <i>descendants</i> | posterō diē, <i>on the following day</i> |
| superī dī, <i>gods on high</i> | omnia supera, īnfera etc. |

Distinguish: superior, *higher in place*
 altior, *higher in extent upward*

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON: DEFECTIVA

88. Dēfectīva gradū positīvō: *without a positive*: (241)

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a. citior, <i>hither, (adj.)</i> | citimus, <i>nearest on this side</i> |
| interior, <i>inner</i> | intimus, <i>inmost, intimate</i> |
| prior, <i>first of two; former</i> | prīmus, <i>foremost, first</i> |
| propior, <i>nearer</i> | proximus, <i>nearest</i> |
| ulterior, <i>farther</i> | ultimus, <i>farthest</i> |

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| b. dēterior, <i>less good; inferior</i> | dēterrimus, <i>meanest</i> |
| potior, <i>preferable</i> | potissimus, <i>most important</i> |
| <i>Distinguish: pēior,</i> | <i>worse = more bad</i> |
| dēterior, | <i>worse = less good</i> |

89. **Comparative or superlative supplied** by synonyms or different forms of the same adjectives:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| alacer, <i>lively;</i> | alacrior, laetissimus (82, a.) |
| ferus, <i>wild;</i> | ferōcior, ferōcissimus |
| frūgī, <i>worthy, honest;</i> | frūgālīor, frūgālissimus |
| gnārus, <i>acquainted</i> | |
| <i>with a thing; skilful;</i> | perītior, perītissimus |
| nēquam, <i>naughty;</i> | nēquior, nēquissimus |
| novus, <i>new;</i> | recentior, recentissimus |
| novissimus, last | |
| agmen novissimum, | <i>rear guard</i> |
| propinquus, <i>near,</i> | propior, proximus (88) |
| prōvidus, <i>circumspect</i> | prōvidentior, prōvidentissimus |
| sacer, <i>sacred (to a god)</i> | sānctior, sacerrimus |
| salūtāris, <i>wholesome,</i> | salūtārīor, salūberrimus |
| vetus, <i>old,</i> | vetustior, veterrimus |

90. *Note:*

- a. (decem, centum) annōs nātus, (10, 100) *years old*
 māior, minor nātū, *older, younger*
 maximus, minimus nātū, *oldest, youngest*
- b. Catō pater or Catō māior, *Cato Sr.*
 Catō fīlius or Catō minor, *Cato Jr.*
- c. superior Africānus or A. māior, *the elder Africanus*
 posterior Africānus, or A. minor. *the younger Africanus*
- d. iuvenis, *man betw. 40-45; (iūnior, sg., not used)*
 iūniōrēs, *younger class of citizens or of senators*
 senex, *more than 60 years old*
 senior, *betw. 45 and 60*

91. STRENGTHENING OF THE DEGREES

- a. **admodum** difficilis }
 valde difficilis } = difficillimus, **very** difficult
 perdifficilis }
- b. paulō difficilior quam, *somewhat more difficult than*
 etiam difficilior quam, *even more difficult than*
 multō difficilior quam, *by far more difficult than*
- c. **vel** difficillimus, **perhaps** the most difficult
 quam difficillimus, **as difficult as possible**
 longē difficillimus, **by far the most difficult**

ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES

92. Most of the adjectives of the **2d declension** and some participles in **us**, when used as adjectives, form their adverbs by adding **ē** to their stems (19):

| | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| pulcher, | pulchr-ē, | <i>beautifully</i> |
| līber, | līber-ē, | <i>freely</i> |
| assiduus, | assidu-ē, | <i>without intermission</i> |
| ōrnātus, | ōrnāt-ē, | <i>elegantly</i> |

93. Adjectives and some Participles of the **3d declension** ending in **ns**, when used as adjectives, form their adverbs by adding **er** to their stems; adjectives of **other** endings add **iter**:

| | | |
|----------|-------------|-----------------------|
| clēmēns, | clēmēt-er, | <i>mildly, gently</i> |
| sapiēns, | sapiēt-er, | <i>wisely</i> |
| fēlix, | fēlic-iter, | <i>luckily</i> |
| ācer, | ācr-iter | <i>keenly</i> |
| similis, | simil-iter, | <i>similarly</i> |

94. Some **accus. sg. neut.** are used as adverbs:

| | | | |
|----------|---------------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| multum, | <i>much</i> ; | nimum, | <i>too much</i> ; <i>too</i> |
| paulum, | <i>little</i> ; | parum, | <i>too little</i> |
| facile, | <i>easily</i> ; | nōn facile, | <i>with difficulty</i> |
| cēterum, | <i>for the rest</i> | | |

95. Many **abl. sg. neut.** are employed as adverbs:

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| citō, | <i>quickly</i> | necessāriō, | <i>necessarily</i> |
| cōsultō, | <i>on purpose</i> | necopinātō, | <i>unexpectedly</i> |
| continuō, | <i>right after</i> | optātō, | <i>acc. to wish</i> |
| crēbrō | <i>frequently</i> | perpetuō, | <i>perpetually</i> |
| falsō, | <i>falsely</i> | rārō, | <i>seldom</i> |
| fortuītō, | <i>by chance</i> | sēcrētō, | <i>secretly</i> |
| (dē, ex) imprōvisō, | <i>on a sudden</i> | sēdulō, | <i>busily</i> |
| manifestō, | <i>palpably</i> | sērō, | <i>(too) late</i> |
| mūtuō, | <i>mutually</i> | subitō, | <i>suddenly</i> |

Distinguish continuō, *right after*
 continenter = perpetuō = assiduē

96. To the following adjectives correspond adverbs of **peculiar formation**:

a. bonus, **bene**, *well*; malus, **male**, *badly*
 alius, **aliter**, *otherwise*; propinquus, **prope**, *near*

b. audāx, audācter, *boldly*; sollers, **sollerter**, *skillfully*

c. nēquam, nēquiter, *worthlessly*
 diūturnus, diū, *a long time*
 fīdus, fidēliter, *faithfully*
 repentīnus, repente, *suddenly*
 temerārius, temere, *indiscreetly*
 recēns, nūper, *lately*
 impūne, *with impunity*

d. firmus, firmē or firmiter, *firmly*
 hūmānus, hūmānē or hūmāniter, *humanly*; *humanely*
 largus, largē or largiter, *abundantly*

e. certus, certē, *certainly*; *at least*; certō, *with certainty*
 vērus, vērē, *according to truth*; vērō, *truly*; *assuredly*

97. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Only such adverbs as are derived from adjectives can be compared.

The **Comparative of the Adverb** is like the comparative of the corresponding adjective in its neuter form: (acc. sg.)

The **Superlative of the Adverb** is formed from the superlative of the corresponding adjective by adding *ē* to the stem (19):

| | | | |
|----|------------------|---|---|
| | ōrnātē | ornātius | ōrnātissimē |
| | <i>elegantly</i> | ¹ more <i>elegantly</i> | ¹ most <i>elegantly</i> |
| | | ² too <i>elegantly</i> | ² very <i>elegantly</i> |
| a. | prūdenter, | <i>prudently</i> ; prūdentius, | prūdentissimē |
| | celeriter, | <i>swiftly</i> ; celerius, | celerrimē |
| | crēbro, | <i>frequently</i> ; crēbrius, | crēberrimē |
| b. | bene | <i>well</i> ; | optimē |
| | male, | <i>badly</i> ; | pessimē |
| | prope, | <i>near</i> ; | proximē |
| | paulum | } <i>little</i> ; | minus, |
| | nōn multum | | |
| | nēquiter, | <i>worthlessly</i> ; nēquius, | nēquissimē |
| | mātūrē, | { ¹ <i>opportunistly</i> ; | { mātūrius, |
| | | | |
| | | ² <i>early</i> | { māturrimē |

98. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

| | | | |
|-------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| diū, | <i>long</i> ; | diūtius | diūtissimē |
| saepe, | <i>often</i> ; | saepius, | saepissimē |
| magnopere | } <i>greatly</i> ; | { magis, | { maxime |
| magnō opere | | { <i>more</i> (in degree) | { <i>most</i> (in degree) |
| multum, | <i>much</i> ; | plūs, | plūrimum |
| | | <i>more</i> (in extent) | <i>most</i> (in extent) |

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| nūper, <i>lately</i> ; | | nūperrimē, <i>quite recently</i> |
| meritō, <i>deservedly</i> ; | | meritissimō |
| tūtō, <i>safely</i> ; | tūtius | tūtissimō |
| | potius, <i>rather</i> , | potissimum <i>above all</i> ; |
| | preferably, | chiefly |
| | prius, | { primō, <i>in the beginning</i> |
| | before; sooner | { primum, <i>for the first</i> |
| | | time; firstly |
| | posterius, | { postrēmō, <i>at last</i> |
| | later | { postrimum, <i>for the</i> |
| | | last time |
| satis, <i>enough</i> , | satius, <i>better; more</i> | |
| | serviceable | |
| | nihilō sētius | { nevertheless |
| | nihilō minus | { |
| | nōn sētius | <i>none the less</i> |

99. *Note:* The three degrees, esp. the comparative, of adverbs in eē, iē, uē are very rare; they may be formed by means of magis and maximē; or supplied by synonymous expressions:

assiduē, *continually*, magis assiduē, *more incessantly*
 assiduissimē (Cic.) or maximā assiduitāte, *most incessantly*

NUMERALIA : NUMERALS

100. The **Question** is answered by

| | | |
|-----------|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| quot, | <i>how many?</i> | adiectīva cardinālia |
| quotus, | { <i>which in order?</i> | adiectīva ordinālia |
| | { <i>of which number in a row?</i> | |
| quotēni, | <i>how many at a time?</i> | adiectīva distribūtīva |
| quotiēns, | <i>how many times?</i> | adverbia numerālia |

| 101. | Cardinālia | Ordinālia |
|------|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 | ūnus, a, um, <i>one</i> | prīmus, a, um, <i>first</i> |
| 2 | duo, ae, o, <i>two</i> | secundus or alter, <i>second</i> |
| 3 | trēs, tria, <i>three</i> | tertius, <i>third</i> |
| 4 | quattuor | quārtus |
| 5 | quīnque | quīntus |
| 6 | sex | sextus |
| 7 | septem | septimus |
| 8 | octō | octāvus |
| 9 | novem | nōnus |
| 10 | decem | decimus |
| 11 | ūndecim | ūndecimus |
| 12 | duodecim | duodecimus |
| 13 | tredecim | tertius decimus |
| 14 | quattuordecim | quārtus decimus |
| 15 | quīndecim | quīntus decimus |
| 16 | sēdecim | sextus decimus |
| 17 | septendecim | septimus decimus |
| 18 | duodēvigintī | duodēvicēsīmus |
| 19 | ūndēvigintī | ūndēvicēsīmus |
| 20 | vīgintī | vicēsīmus |
| 21 | unus et vīgintī or vīgintī ūnus | ūnus et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus prīmus |
| 22 | duo et vīgintī or vīgintī duo | alter et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus alter |
| 23 | trēs et vīgintī or vīgintī trēs | tertius et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus tertius |
| 28 | duodētrīgintā | duodētricēsīmus |
| 29 | ūndētrīgintā | ūndētricēsīmus |
| 30 | trīgintā | tricēsīmus |
| 40 | quadrāgintā | quadrāgēsīmus |
| 50 | quīnquāgintā | quīnquāgēsīmus |
| 60 | sexāgintā | sexāgēsīmus |
| 70 | septuāgintā | septuāgēsīmus |
| 80 | octōgintā | octōgēsīmus |
| 90 | nōnāgintā | nōnāgēsīmus |

| Distribūtīva | Adverbia numerālia | Notation |
|--|------------------------------------|-------------|
| singulī, ae, a, <i>one by one</i> | semel, <i>once</i> | I |
| bīnī, ae, a, <i>two by two</i> | bis, <i>twice</i> | II |
| ternī, <i>three by three</i> | ter, <i>three times</i> | III |
| quaternī | quater | IIII - IV |
| quīnī | quīnquiēs or ...iēns | V |
| sēnī | sexiēs | VI |
| septēnī | septiēs | VII |
| octōnī | octiēs | VIII |
| novēnī | noviēs | VIIII - IX |
| dēnī | deciēs | X |
| ūndēnī | ūndeciēs | XI |
| duodēnī | duodeciēs | XII |
| ternī dēnī | ter deciēs | XIII |
| quaternī dēnī | quater deciēs | XIIII - XIV |
| quīnī dēnī | quīnquiēs deciēs | XV |
| sēnī dēnī | sexiēs deciēs | XVI |
| septēnī dēnī | septiēs deciēs | XVII |
| duodēvīcēnī | duodēvīciēs | XVIII |
| ūndēvīcēnī | ūndēvīciēs | XIIII - XIX |
| vīcēnī | vīciēs | XX |
| singulī et vīcēnī or vīcēnī singulī | semel et vīciēs or vīciēs semel | XXI |
| bīnī et vīcēnī or vīcēnī bīnī | bis et vīciēs or vīciēs bis | XXII |
| ternī et vīcēnī or vīcēnī ternī | ter et vīciēs or vīciēs ter | XXIII |
| duodētrīcēnī | duodētrīciēs | XXVIII |
| ūndētrīcēnī | ūndētrīciēs | XXIX |
| trīcēnī | trīciēs | XXX |
| quadrāgēnī | quadrāgiēs | XL |
| quīnquāgēnī | quīnquāgiēs | L |
| sexāgēnī | sexāgiēs | LX |
| septuāgēnī | septuāgiēs | LXX |
| octōgēnī | octōgiēs | LXXX |
| nōnāgēnī | nōnāgiēs | XC |

| | | |
|---------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 100 | centum | centēsīmus |
| 200 | ducentī, ae, a | ducentēsīmus |
| 300 | trecentī | trecentēsīmus |
| 400 | quadringentī | quadringentēsīmus |
| 500 | quīngentī | quīngentēsīmus |
| 600 | sescentī | sescentēsīmus |
| 700 | septingentī | septingentēsīmus |
| 800 | octingentī | octingentēsīmus |
| 900 | nōngentī | nōngentēsīmus |
| 1000 | mīlle | mīllēsīmus |
| 2000 | duo mīlia | bis mīllēsīmus |
| 1000000 | decīēs centēna mīlia | decīēs centiēs mīllēsīmus |
| 5000000 | quīnquāgiēs centēna mīlia | quīnquagiēs centiēs mīllēsīmus |

102. DECLENSION OF THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The only **cardinals** declined are

- 1, ūnus, duo, trēs
- 2, the hundreds above 100
- 3, the plural mīlia

| | m. | f. | n. | | m. | f. | n. |
|------|-------|-------|------|--|--------------|---------|--------|
| Nom. | ūnus, | ūna, | ūnum | | duo, | duae, | duo |
| Acc. | ūnum, | ūnam, | ūnum | | duōs or duo, | duas, | duo |
| Gen. | | ūnīus | | | duōrum, | duārum, | duōrum |
| Dat. | | unī | | | duōbus, | duābus, | duōbus |
| Abl. | ūnō | ūnā, | ūnō | | duōbus, | duābus, | duōbus |

| | m. | f. | n. | n. |
|------|-------|--------|------|---------|
| Nom. | trēs, | trēs, | tria | mīlia |
| Acc. | trēs, | trēs, | tria | mīlia |
| Gen. | | trium | | mīlium |
| Dat. | | tribus | | mīlibus |
| Abl. | | tribus | | mīlibus |

103. a. Ambō, ae, ō, both, is declined like duo, ae, o. (158):

Erant itinera duo
 Ambōrum cōsulum
 Cum duābus lēgiōnibus

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| centēnī ducēnī tre cēnī quadrīngēnī quīngēnī sescēnī septīngēnī octīngēnī nōngēnī | centiēs ducentiēs tre centiēs quadrīngentiēs quīngentiēs sescentiēs septīngentiēs octīngentiēs nōngentiēs | C CC CCC CCCC D DC DCC DCCC DCCCC |
| singula mīlia bīna mīlia deciēs centēna mīlia quīnquāgiēs centēna mīlia | mīlliēs bis mīlliēs deciēs centiēs mīlliēs quīnquāgiēs centiēs mīlliēs | M = CIO MM = II \overline{X} \overline{L} |

b. mīlle is an indeclinable adjective,

mīlia is a declinable substantive:

mīlle hominēs : *a thousand men*

mīlle hominum : *of a thousand men*

tria mīlia hominum : *three thousand men*

tribus mīlibus hominum : *to three thousand men*

104. The **ordinals and distributives** are declined like adjectives of the 1st and 2d declensions; the gen pl. of the distributives (exc. singulī), however, usually ends in um instead of ōrum:

singulōrum; bīnum, bīnārum, bīnum

Note: alter, a um, *second*, is declined like ūnus, a, um:

gen.: alterīus; dat.: alterī.

105. COMPOUND NUMERALS

a. In numbers from 21-99 incl.

either the **lower** denomination **precedes with** et,

or the **higher** denomination **precedes without** et:

sex et vīgintī or vīgintī sex.

b. In numbers above 100

the **higher** denomination **precedes** the lower one, usually **without** et:

101 - centum (et) ūnus

110 - centum (et) decem

126 - centum vīgintī sex

2300 *men* - duo mīlia trecenti hominēs

or duo mīlia **hominum** et trecentī

with 2300 men - cum duōbus mīlibus trecentīs hominibus

Note: *Unus* must be separated from a plural substantive:

ūnus et vīgintī mīlitēs

ūnīus et vīgintī mīlitum

ūnum et vīgintī mīlia hominum

c. The compounds of tens with 8 or 9 are commonly expressed by subtraction, *duo*- and *ūn*- remaining unchanged:

duodētrīgintā nāvēs, 28 ships

ūndēcentum nautae, 99 sailors

but *duae* et trīgintā nāvēs, 32 ships

USES OF NUMERALS

106. An “infinite” number is expressed by

sescentī, mīllēsīmus, mīlliēs:

sescentī cecidērunt, **thousands** fell

vix mīllēsima est pars **an utterly small fraction**

mīlliēs melius est **this is infinitely better**

107. Dates and hours are expressed by **cardinals**:

In 1821: annō mīllēsīmō octingentēsīmō vīcēsīmō ūnō (or
prīmō):

at 3 o'clock: {exeunte hōrā nōnā or ineunte hōrā decimā
{modernized: hōrā tertiā (i. e. exeunte)

108. **Fractions** (partēs) are expressed by cardinals and ordinals: the numerator by cardinals, the denominator by ordinals;

trēs septimae (partēs is understood) = $\frac{3}{7}$

However,

a. if the numerator is 1, the denominator only is given;

septima pars = $\frac{1}{7}$; decima pars = $\frac{1}{10}$;

b. if the numerator is but **one smaller** than the denominator, the numerator only is mentioned:

sex partēs = $\frac{6}{7}$; novem partēs = $\frac{9}{10}$

c. dimidia pars = $\frac{1}{2}$.

109. Distributives are used

a.: to express "**so many apiece, so many at a time**"

dēna iūgera in singulōs dīscrīpsit:

he allotted ten acres to each one.

Note: 1. One of the two distributives is sometimes replaced by a cardinal:

decem iūgera in singulōs dīscrīpsit;

dēna iūgera in cīvēs dīscrīpsit.

2. If "each, apiece" is understood, it is not expressed:

ūnum ōs habēmus, duōs pedēs, duās manūs.

b.: excepting singulī and ternī, the distributives are used **as cardinals** with nouns **plural in form, but singular in meaning**:

bīnae litterae, *two epistles*;

110. Note: Unī and trīnī take the place of singulī and ternī.

111. Note: a. Unī and trīnī have **one** meaning,
singulī and ternī have **two** meanings,
bīnī, quaternī etc. have **three** meanings.

ūnae, trīnae litterae : *one, three letters (epistles)*

singulae, ternae, litterae: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{one, three characters at a time} \\ \text{one, three letters at a time} \end{array} \right.$

bīnae, quaternae etc. l'ae: $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{two, four etc. letters} \\ \text{two, four etc. characters at a time} \\ \text{two, four etc. letters at a time} \end{array} \right.$

(See also 158)

b. **duo** liberī = *two children*:

Liberī is plural both in form and in meaning.

112. Numeral adverbs and distributives are employed in the

MULTIPLICATION TABLE

$1 \times 1 = 1$: semel ūnum est ūnum

$2 \times 1 = 2$: bis singula sunt duo

$3 \times 1 = 3$: ter singula sunt tria

$1 \times 3 = 3$: semel tria sunt tria

$2 \times 3 = 6$: bis terna sunt sex

$3 \times 3 = 9$: ter terna sunt novem

113. Multiplicātiva : Adjectives in plex, plicis.

| | | | |
|----------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| simplex, | <i>one-fold</i> | quadruplex, | <i>four-fold</i> |
| duplex, | <i>two-fold</i> | septemplex, | <i>seven-fold</i> |
| triplex, | <i>three-fold</i> | decemplex, | <i>ten-fold</i> |

114. Adverbia numerālia in um (formed from the ordinals):

| | | | |
|---|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| primum, | iterum, | tertium | postrēmum, |
| <i>for the first,</i> | <i>second,</i> | <i>third</i> | <i>last time;</i> |
| iterum cōnsul, <i>consul for the second time.</i> | | | |

115. Note: a. Distinguish the preceding series from the following:

| | | | |
|---|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| primum, | deinde, | tum, tum..... | postrēmō or dēnique, |
| <i>firstly,</i> | <i>secondly,</i> | <i>thirdly,.....</i> | <i>lastly</i> |
| or: <i>in the 1st place, then, next..... lastly</i> | | | |
| b. <i>prīmō at first; deinde, afterward; postea, later on</i> | | | |

PRONOMINA**116. I. Prōnōmina persōnālia = Personal Pronouns**

There are **reflexive** and **non-reflexive** personal pronouns; they are reflexive, when they refer to the subject of the sentence; otherwise they are non-reflexive.

117. FIRST PERSON

| Non-reflexive Forms | | | Reflexive Forms | |
|---------------------|------------|---------------------|---|--|
| Singular | | | | |
| Nom. | ego, | <i>I</i> | — | |
| Acc. | mē, | <i>me (23)</i> | mē, <i>myself</i> (as object: 23) | |
| Gen. | meī, | <i>of me</i> | meī, <i>of myself</i> | |
| Dat. | mihi, | <i>to or for me</i> | mihi, <i>to or for myself</i> | |
| Abl. | { ā mē, | <i>by me</i> | ā mē, <i>by myself</i> | |
| | { mēcūm, | <i>with me</i> | mēcūm, <i>with myself</i> | |
| Plural | | | | |
| Nom. | nōs, | <i>we</i> | — | |
| Acc. | nōs, | <i>us</i> | nōs, <i>ourselves</i> (as object: 23) | |
| Gen. | { nostrī | <i>of us</i> | nostrī, <i>of ourselves</i> | |
| | { nostrūm, | <i>of, among us</i> | nostrūm, <i>of, among our-</i> <i>selves</i> | |
| Dat. | nōbīs | <i>to or for us</i> | nōbīs, <i>to or for ourselves</i> | |
| Abl. | { ā nōbīs, | <i>by us</i> | ā nōbīs, <i>by ourselves</i> | |
| | { nōbīscūm | <i>with us</i> | nōbīscūm, <i>with ourselves</i> | |

118.

SECOND PERSON

| Non-reflexive Forms | | Reflexive Forms | |
|---------------------|--|--|--|
| Singular | | | |
| Nom. | tū, <i>thou, you</i> | — | |
| Acc. | tē, <i>you (object 23)</i> | tē, <i>yourself (object 23)</i> | |
| Gen. | tuī, <i>of you</i> | tuī, <i>of yourself</i> | |
| Dat. | tibi, <i>to or for you</i> | tibi, <i>to or for yourself</i> | |
| Abl. | { ā tē, <i>by you</i> tēcum, <i>with you</i> | { ā tē, <i>by yourself</i> tēcum, <i>with yourself</i> | |
| Plural | | | |
| Nom. | vōs, <i>you</i> | — | |
| Acc. | vōs, <i>you (object)</i> | vōs, <i>yourselves (object)</i> | |
| Gen. | { vestrī, <i>of you</i> { vestrūm, <i>of, among you</i> | { vestrī, <i>of yourselves</i> { vestrūm, <i>of, among your- selves</i> | |
| Dat. | vōbīs, <i>to or for you</i> | vōbīs, <i>to or for yourselves</i> | |
| Abl. | { ā vōbīs, <i>by you</i> { vōbīscum, <i>with you</i> | { ā vobis, <i>by yourselves</i> { vōbīscum, <i>with yourselves</i> | |

119. Note : a. Nostrī and vestrī are **objective** genitives :

Memor nostrī, vestrī, *mindful of us, you;*

b. Nostrum and vestrum are **partitive** genitives :

Quis **vestrum**, *who of you?* Nēmō nostrum, *no one of us*

c. But nōs (vōs) omnēs, **all** of us (you)

Genitive: nostrum (vestrum) omnium

Dative : nōbīs (vōbīs) omnibus

Ablative : { ā nōbīs (vōbīs) omnibus
nōbīscum omnibus
cum omnibus vōbīs

120.

THIRD PERSON

Note: The non-reflexive form for the **nominative** of the third person is wanting; but it is **replaced** by the nominative of the determinative pronoun; the non-reflexive forms for the **oblique** cases, however, are **the same** as the corresponding forms of the determinative pronoun.

| Non-reflexive Forms | | | Reflexive Forms | |
|--|--|-----------------------|-----------------|--|
| Singular | | | | |
| Nom. | is, ea, id, | <i>he, she, it</i> | — | [object] |
| Acc. | eum, eam, id, | <i>him, her, it</i> | sē, | <i>himself, herself, itself</i> |
| Gen. | ēius, | <i>of him.....</i> | suī, | <i>of himself, hers., its.</i> |
| Dat. | eī, | <i>to him.....</i> | sibi, | <i>to himself, hers., its.</i> |
| Abl. | { eō, eā, eō, | <i>by means of...</i> | { (ā) sē, | <i>by himself, by her- self, by itself</i> |
| | { abeō, <i>by him</i> ; cum eō, | <i>with him</i> | { sēcum, | <i>with himself, with herself, with itself</i> |
| Plural | | | | |
| Nom. | iī (eī), eae, ea, | <i>they</i> | — | |
| Acc. | eōs, eās, ea, | <i>them</i> | sē, | <i>themselves (object)</i> |
| Gen. | eōrum | } <i>of them</i> | suī, | <i>of themselves</i> |
| | eārum | | | |
| Dat. | iīs (eīs) | <i>to them</i> | sibi, | <i>to themselves</i> |
| Abl. | { iīs (eis) | <i>by means of</i> | { (ā) sē, | <i>by themselves</i> |
| | { ab iīs, <i>by them</i> cum iīs, <i>with them</i> | | | <i>sēcum, with themselves</i> |
| sē laudat, <i>he praises himself, his own person</i> | | | | |
| eum laudat, <i>he praises him, another person</i> | | | | |

STRENGTHENED FORMS

121. Note: Many forms of the personal pronouns can be strengthened: sē by reduplication, tū by appending tē, the other forms, exc. the non-refl. 3d person and the gen. (pl.), by appending met:

egomet, mēmet, mihimet; nōsmet, nōbīsmet
 tūte, tēmet, tibimet; vōsmet, vōbīsmet
 sēsē, sēsē, sibimet, ā sēsē

122. PRONOMINA POSSESSIVA POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

| Non-reflexive Forms | | Reflexive Forms | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1st and 2d Person | | 1st and 2d Persons: | |
| All cases of | | The oblique cases of | |
| meus, | a, um, <i>my</i> | meus, | a, um, <i>my</i> |
| noster, | a, um, <i>our</i> (30) | noster, | a, um, <i>our</i> |
| tuus, | a, um, <i>your</i> (sg.) | tuus, | a, um, <i>your</i> (sg.) |
| vester, | a, um, <i>your</i> (pl.) | vester, | a, um, <i>your</i> (pl.) |
| 3d Person: | | 3d Person: | |
| The unchangeable genitives | | All cases of | |
| ēius, | <i>his, her, its</i> | suus, | a, um, <i>his etc. own</i> |
| eōrum, eārum, eōrum | <i>their</i> | suus, | a, um, <i>their own</i> |

123.

Note 1: Meus, noster, tuus, vester and suus are **pronominal adjectives** of the 1st and 2d decl. (30);

ēius, eōrum, eārum, are the **unchangeable genitives** of the determinative pronoun (120, 128).

Note 2: If the possessive is understood from the context, it is omitted: amicum laudat, *he praises his (own) friend*

124. Suus is used to refer:

a) to the **subject**:

amicum suum laudat, *he praises his own friend*

b) to the **object**, when it means "**his own**":

amicus **suus** eum nōn laudat } **his own friend**.....
amicus **suus** eī nōn fidit }

Eius is used in all other cases:

amicus **ēius** mortuus est, *his friend is dead*
(referring to a word mentioned previously)

amicum **ēius** laudat, *he praises his friend* (another person's whose name is already known).

125.

STRENGTHENED FORMS

suōpte pondere, *by its own weight*

suāpte manū, *with his own hand*

PRONOMINA DEMONSTRATIVA: DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

126.

Hīc, haec, hōc, **this** (*near me*)

iste, ista, istud, **that** (*near you*)

ille, illa, illud, **that** (*near him*)

| Singular | | | | Plural | | |
|----------|--------|--------|-------|----------|----------|---------|
| Nom. | hīc, | haec, | hōc | hī, | hae, | haec |
| Acc. | hunc, | hanc, | hōc | hōs, | hās, | haec |
| Gen. | | hūius | | hōrum | hārum | hōrum |
| Dat. | | huīc | | | hīs | |
| Abl. | hōc, | hāc, | hōc | | hīs | |
| Nom. | ille, | illa, | illud | illī, | illae, | illa |
| Acc. | illum, | illam, | illud | illōs, | illās, | illa |
| Gen. | | illīus | | illōrum, | illārum, | illōrum |
| Dat. | | illī | | | illīs | |
| Abl. | illō | illā, | illō | | illīs | |

127. *Note 1:* Iste is declined like ille.

Note 2: The forms of hīc ending in **s** may be **strengthened** by **ce**:

hūius**ce**, hōs**ce**, hās**ce**, hīs**ce**.

Note 3: A secondary form for hae is haec.

Note 4: Rare forms for ille and iste are:

illīc, illaec, illūc; istīc, istaec, istūc (acc. on last:8, c)

Note 5: When the interrogative **ne** is appended to the old forms in **ce**, the ending **-cene** is weakened into **cine**:

hīcine, haecine, hōcine, illīcine?

PRONOMINA DETERMINATIVA: DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS

128. The determinative pronouns **specify** the objects for which they stand by referring

either to something preceding

or to a relative following:

Is, ea, id : ¹⁾ *he, she, it, that one* (person or thing mentioned **before**);

²⁾ *he, she, that* (as antecedent to a relative **following**):

idem, eadem, idem, **the same**;

ipse, ipsa, **ipsum, -self** (130).

Note: The declension of **is** is given in n. 120; (see also 123.)

| 129. | Singular | | | Plural | | |
|-------------|----------|--------|--------------|----------|----------|----------|
| Nom. | īdem | eadem | idem | idem | eadem | éadem |
| Acc. | eundem | eandem | idem | eōsdem | eāsdem | éadem |
| Gen. | ēiusdem | | | eōrundem | eārundem | eōrundem |
| Dat. | eīdem | | | īdem | | |
| Abl. | eōdem | eādem | eōdem | īdem | | |
| Nom. | ipse | ipsa | ipsum | ipsī | ipsae | ipsa |
| Acc. | ipsum | ipsam | ipsum | ipsōs | ipsās | ipsa |
| Gen. | ipsīus | | | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| Dat. | ipsī | | | ipsīs | | |
| Abl. | ipsum | ipsam | ipsum | ipsīs | | |

130. Distinguish the determinative **self** from the reflexive **self**:

a. The determinative self, **ipse**, which is used to **emphasize** a word, **agrees** in gender, number and case with its substantive or pronoun:

ipsī puerī : *the boys themselves*

ipsōrum puerōrum : *of the boys themselves*

egomet ipse, nostrum ipsōrum, nōbīsmet ipsīs.....

b. The reflexive self, **sē**, **suī**, **sibi**, **never modifies**, but **refers** to the subject only, being dependent in case on the word by which it is governed:

(ipse) sē laudat : *he praises himself*

(ipsa) suī immemor est : *she is unmindful of herself*

(ipsī) sibi cōsulunt : *they care for themselves*

131. Instead of the plural **īdem**, also **iīdem** and **eīdem**, instead of the plural **īdem**, also **iīdem** and **eīdem** occur.

132. PRONOMINA RELATIVA = RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, quae, quod, *who, which*

| | Singular | | | Plural | | |
|------|----------|--------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|
| Nom. | quī | quae | quod | quī | quae | quae |
| Acc. | quem | quam | quod | quōs | quās | quae |
| Gen. | | cū | ius | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| Dat. | | cui | | | quibus | |
| Abl. | { | ā quō | ā quā | quō | ā quibus | quibus |
| | | quōcum | quācum | quōcum | quibuscum | |

133. Note 1: The relative refers to a substantive or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its **antecedent**:

puer, quī bonus est laudātur

quī bonus est, **is** laudātur

quī bonus est, laudātur.

134. Note 2: Instead of **quōcum** also **cum quō**,

“ “ **quācum** “ **cum quā**,

“ “ **quibuscum** “ **cum quibus** occurs.

135. GENERAL RELATIVES

Relative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs may be made **general in signification** by taking **cumque** or by being **doubled**:

1. Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever*
are declined like quī, quae, quod, cumque remaining unchanged:

cūiuscumque, cuīcumque...;

they are both **substantives**: quicumque bonus est, laudātur,
and **adjectives** : quaecumque rēs.....

2. **Quisquis** (subst.), *whoever*
quidquid (subst.), *whatever*
quōquō modō, *in whatever manner*

Note: Of quisquis only the 3 preceding forms are in common use.

PRONOMINA INTERROGATIVA : INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

136. **Quis**, *who?* **Quid**, *what?*
(used as substantives.)

| Singular | | | Plural | |
|----------|-------------|-------------|----------|--------|
| Nom. | quis | quid | quī | quae |
| Acc. | quem | quid | quōs | quae |
| Gen. | cūius | | quōrum | |
| Dat. | cui | | quibus | |
| Abl. | ā quō | quo | ā quibus | quibus |

Note: Quis is either **masc.** or of **indeterminate** gender: m. or f.

137. Quī, quae, **quod**, *what kind of? what? which?*
are used as **adjectives**; they are declined like the relative.

138. Uter, utra, utrum, { *which of two persons?*
 { *which or what of two things?*
are used both as **substantives** and as **adjectives**. (Decl. 154)

| Substantives | Adjectives |
|--|------------------------------------|
| quis nostrum, <i>who of us (many)?</i> | quī rex, <i>what kind of king?</i> |
| uter nostrum, <i>which of us two?</i> | |
| quid factum est, <i>what has happened?</i> | utra manus, <i>which hand?</i> |
| | quod facinus, <i>what outrage?</i> |

139. STRENGTHENED FORMS OF THE INTERROGATIVE

Substantives

Quisnam, quidnam? *who, what indeed?*
 quis tandem, quid tandem? *who, what in the world?*

Adjectives

Quānam, quaenam, quodnam? *of what kind indeed?*
 quaenam rēs? quae tandem rēs?

140.

Note: Quī (an old abl.) = quo modo? *In what manner, how?*
 Quī fit? *How does it happen?*

141. PRONOMINA INDEFINITA: INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

| Used as Substantives | | Used as Adjectives |
|---|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. aliquis <i>someone</i> | aliquid <i>something</i> | aliquī, aliqua , aliquod <i>some</i> |
| dīcit aliquis, <i>someone says</i> dīcit aliquid, <i>he says something</i> | | aliquī rēx aliqua rēs aliquod verbum aliqua verba |
| 2. quis <i>some one</i> | quid <i>anything</i> | quī, quae or qua , quod <i>any</i> |
| (used especially after sī, nisi, nē, num and relatives) | | |
| sī quis, <i>if any one</i> sī quid, <i>if anything</i> | | sī quī rēx, sī quae or qua rēs sī quod verbum, sī quae or qua verba |
| nē quis, { lit: <i>lest any one</i> usu: that no one | | nē qui puer, <i>that no boy</i> nē qua causa, <i>that no cause</i> nē qua verba, <i>that no words</i> |
| nē quid that nothing | | |

142. Note 1: The compounds of quis and quī are declined like quis and quī.

But **aliqua** = ¹) fem. sg. nom.; ²) neut. pl. n. and acc. of aliquis;
quae or **qua** = ¹) fem. sg. nom.; ²) neut. pl. n. and acc. of quis.
 The prefix ali- and the appended syllables remain unchanged.

143. Note 2: quis and aliquis are sometimes used as adjectives;
 quī and aliquī are sometimes used as substantives:
 sī quis rēx = sī quī rēx
 sī quī dīcit = sī quis dīcit

144. Note 3: quispiam, quaeipiam, quippiam (quidpiam) =
 aliquis, aliquid
 quispiam, quaeipiam, quoppiam (quodpiam) =
 aliquī, aliquae, aliquod.

145. Note 4: **num** quis = **ecquis**; **num** qui = **ecquī**
 num quis dīxit, *did any one say.....?*
 ecqua civitās est, *is there perhaps any city.....?*

146.

| Used as Substantives | Used as Adjectives |
|--|---|
| 3 <i>néuter, néutra, néutrum</i> <i>neither of two</i> | <i>néuter, néutra, néutrum</i> <i>neither of two</i> |
| 4 <i>nēmō nobody:</i> <i>nēmō, nēminem, nūllius</i> <i>nēminī, ā nūllō</i> <i>nihil, nothing:</i> <i>nihil, nihil, nūllīus reī</i> <i>nūllī reī, nūllā rē</i> | <i>nūllus, nūlla, nūllum</i> <i>(154)</i> <i>no</i> |
| 5 Sg. <i>quisquam, ūlla, quidquam</i> pl. <i>ūllī, ūllae, ūlla</i> <i>anybody</i> <i>nēmō vēnit, nobody came</i> neque quisquam <i>vēnit,</i> <i>(and not anyone), i. e.</i> and nobody came <i>nihil fēcit, he did nothing</i> neque quidquam <i>fēcit,</i> and he did nothing | <i>ūllus, ūlla, ūllum</i> <i>ūllī, ūllae, ūlla</i> <i>any</i> <i>nūlla spēs no hope</i> neque ūlla spēs, <i>(and not any) i. e. and no hope</i> <i>sine ūllā spē, without any</i> <i>hope</i> |

147. Note: *Nēmō* and *quisquam*, instead of *nūllus* and *ūllus*, are added;

a. to **adjectives** used as **personal** masc. substantives

b. often to personal masculine **substantives:**

a. *nēmō Rōmānus, no Roman*
neque quisquam doctus, and no learned man

b. *nēmō cīvis, no citizen*
neque quisquam servus, and no slave

But: *nūlla rēs, no thing*
neque ūlla rēs, and no thing

| 148. Used as Substantives | Used as Adjectives |
|---|---|
| 6 <i>quīdam: quaedam, quiddam</i> <i>a certain one</i> | <i>quīdam, quaedam, quoddam</i> <i>a certain</i> |
| <i>Note: md is changed into nd:</i> <i>quendam, quandam, quorundam</i> | <i>amīcus quīdam, a certain friend</i> <i>(who might be named, if necessary)</i> |

GENERAL INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

| 149. Used as Substantives | Used as Adjectives |
|---|---|
| <p>7. quisque, quidque each one severally</p> <p>--- Note: Quisque usually follows: a superlative: optimus quisque, <i>all the best</i> an ordinal: quotus quisque, <i>how few</i> (in leading cl. only) <i>quintō quōque annō, every fourth year</i> <i>tertiō quōque diē every other day</i> a reflexive: prō sē quisque, <i>each to the best of his power</i></p> <p>sim. a relative, an interrogative pronoun or adverb</p> | <p>quisque, quaeque, quodque each (severally)</p> |
| <p>150. 8. ūnusquisque, ūnum- quidque each one individually Gen.: ūnīuscūiusque Dat.: ūnīcūique.</p> | <p>ūnusquisque, -quaeque, -quodque each (individually)</p> |
| <p>151. 9. uterque, ūtraque, utrumque each of two separately</p> | <p>uterque, ūtraque, utrumque each of two separately (See n. 154 and 158)</p> |

152. Note 1: -quisque and uterque are distributive;
see n. 149-151

Omnēs and ambō are collective;
omnes = *all together*
ambō = *two together, both*

153. Note 2: Other general indefinite pronouns are:

| Used as Substantives | Used as Adjectives |
|---|--|
| 10 quīvīs, quaevis; quid vīs any one you will | quīvīs, quaevis, quod vīs any you will |
| 11 quīlibet, quaelibet, quid libet any one you please | quīlibet, quaelibet, quod libet any you please |
| 12 utérvīs, útravīs, utrúmvis either of two you will | utérvīs, útravīs, utrúmvis either of two you will |
| 13 utérlibet, utrálíbet, utrúmlibet either of two you please | utérlibet, utrálíbet, utrúmlibet either of two you please |

ADIECTIVA PRONOMINALIA: PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

154. Unus, sōlus, tōtus, ūllus,
 Uter, alter, néuter, nūllus,
 And as ninth add alius.

| | Singular | Plural |
|------|------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. | ūnus, ūna, ūnum | ūnī, ūnae, ūna |
| Acc. | ūnum, ūnam, ūnum | ūnōs, ūnās, ūna |
| Gen. | ūnīus | ūnōrum, ūnārum, ūnōrum |
| Dat. | ūnī | ūnīs |
| Abl. | ūnō, ūnā, ūnō | ūnīs |

ūnus, a, um, *one*
 sōlus, a, um, *alone*
 tōtus, a, um, *whole*
 ūllus, a, um, *any*

uter, utra, utrum, *which of two*
 alter, altera, alterum, *the other*
 néuter, néutra, néutrum, *neither*
 nūllus, a, um, *none*

alius, alia, aliud, *another*

155. Note 1: The gen. sg. of alter, a, um, is alterīus

The gen. sg. of alius, a, **ud**, is alterīus; (aliūs is rare).

156. Note 2: Uter is both an interrogative (138) and an an indefinite relative:

Utrum tibi commodum est, *ēlige*:

choose the one of the two which suits you

157. Note 3: Altéruter, altérutra, altérutrum, *any of two*
 alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum, *any of two*

Gen. alterutrīus; alterīus utrīus

Distinguish:

Uter puer, *which of the two boys*
 uterque puer, *each of the two boys, both* (152)
 alter puer, *one of the two boys*
 néuter puer, *neither of the two boys*
 altéruter puer, *either of the two boys*

158. Note 4: The plural of uterque is used

a. esp. of two individual subjects regarded as belonging together:

utrīque scyphī, *both goblets*
 utraeque ēius uxōrēs, *both his wives*

b. with plūrālia tantum:

utraeque litterae *both letters*

c. to denote a plurality on two sides:

utrīque, *both parties*

159.

CORRELATIVES

The relation of question and answer is expressed by correlative pronouns and adverbs.

160. Prōnōmina Correlātīva: **Correlative Pronouns**

| Question | Definite Answer | Indefinite Answer |
|------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| Interrogative | Determ. & Relative | Indefinite Pron. |
| quis, <i>who?</i> | is, quī, <i>he who</i> | aliquis, <i>someone</i> |
| quālis, <i>of what sort?</i> | tālis, quālis, <i>such as</i> | — |
| quantus, <i>how</i> | tantus, quantus, | — |
| <i>great?</i> | <i>so great as</i> | |
| quantum, <i>how</i> | tantum, quantum, | aliquantum, <i>not a</i> |
| <i>much?</i> | <i>so much as</i> | <i>little</i> |
| quot, <i>how many?</i> | tot, quot, <i>so many as</i> | aliquot, <i>several;</i> |
| | <small>Note: tot and quot are indeclinable.</small> | <i>a goodly number</i> |

161. Note: Totidem, just as many, tantundem, just as much
 quotquot = quotcumque *how many soever*

162. Note: Tantus, a, um and quantus, a, um, are adjectives;
 tantum, ī, n., and quantum, ī, n., are substantives:
 tanta pecūnia = tantum pecuniae, *so much money*

163. **Correlative Pronominal Adverbs**

| I. Adverbia locī - Adverbs of Place | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1. Interrogātīva \ ubī, <i>where;</i> unde, <i>whence</i> et relātīva \ quō, <i>where, whither</i> quā (via), <i>by</i> <i>what way</i> | | |
| 2. Dēterminātīva | 3. Dēmōnstrātīva | 4. Indēfīnīta |
| ibī, <i>there</i> ibidem, <i>in the same place</i> | hīc, <i>here</i> istīc, <i>there (near you)</i> illīc, <i>there (near him)</i> | alicubī, <i>somewhere</i> alibī, <i>elsewhere</i> usquam, <i>anywhere</i> (<i>in sent. with neg. meaning</i>) |
| eō, <i>there = thither</i> eōdem, <i>to the same place</i> | hūc, <i>here = hither</i> istūc, <i>there = thither</i> illūc, <i>there = thither</i> | aliquō, <i>to some place</i> aliō, <i>to another pl.</i> quōquam, <i>to any pl.</i> |
| inde, <i>thence, from there</i> indidem, <i>from the same place</i> | hinc, <i>hence, from here</i> istinc, <i>thence (2d p.)</i> illinc, <i>thence (3d p.)</i> | alicunde, <i>from somewhere</i> aliunde, <i>from another place</i> — [place] |
| eā, <i>on that side</i> eādem, <i>by the same way</i> | hāc, <i>by this way</i> ¹ istāc, <i>by that way</i> ² illāc, <i>by that way</i> ³ | aliquā, <i>on some way</i> aliā, <i>on another w.</i> — |

| General Relatives | General Indefinites |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ubicumque, <i>wherever</i> | ubique, <i>everywhere</i> |
| quocumque, <i>to whatever place</i> | nūquam, <i>nowhere</i> |
| undecumque, <i>from whatever pl.</i> | undique, <i>from all sides</i> |

164. Aliquō locō = alicubi *somewhere*
 aliō locō = alibi *elsewhere*
 (in) omnibus locis *everywhere*

Note: Ubique is used almost exclusively after relative and interrogative pronouns:

omnēs, quī ubique sunt *all, wherever they may be*

| 165. II. Adverbia temporis: | | Adverbs of Time. |
|--|---|--|
| 1. Interrogātīva et relātīva | | { quandō (int. and rel.) { cum (relative) } <i>when</i> quotiēns, <i>how often</i> quam diū, <i>how long</i> |
| 2. Dēterminātīva | 3. Dēmōnstrātīva | 4. Indēfīnīta |
| tum } <i>then</i> , tunc } <i>at that time</i> cum....., tum... <i>when..., then...</i> antēā, <i>before (any fixed time)</i> postēā, <i>after (any fixed time)</i> | nunc , <i>now</i> antehāc, <i>before (this present time)</i> posthāc, <i>after (this present time)</i> | aliquando , <i>at some time</i> aliās , <i>at another time</i> umquam (<i>in neg. sent.</i>), <i>at any time</i> |
| totiēns, <i>so often</i> (totiēns, quotiēns) | | aliquotiēns, <i>some, i. e. several times</i> |
| tam diū, <i>so long</i> (tam diū, quam diū) | adhūc, <i>until now</i> | aliquamdiū, <i>for some (considerable) time</i> |
| General Relatives | General Indefinites | |
| quandocumque, <i>whenever</i> quotienscumque, <i>however often</i> | numquam, <i>never</i> | |

166. *Note:* a. quondam, *at a certain time; formerly*
 like quidam, *a certain one*
 b. olim, ¹⁾ *formerly*; ²⁾ *at a future date*

167. III. Adverbia modī : Adverbs of Manner and Degree

| Interrogātīva et relātīva | Dēterminātīva |
|---|---|
| ut , (utī), <i>how</i> | ita, sic { ¹⁾ <i>so, in such a manner</i> ²⁾ <i>so, to such a degree</i> |
| quam { (esp. before adj. and adv.) <i>how</i> | item, itidem , <i>in the same manner</i> |
| <i>quam bonus, how good</i> <i>quam bene, how well</i> | tam { (esp. before adj. and adv.) <i>so</i> <i>tam fortis, so brave</i> <i>tam fortiter, so bravely</i> |

168. Note: Tot puerī = tam multī puerī
General Rel. : utcumque = howsoever

169. VERBS

The inflection of the **Verb (Conjugation)** comprises:

- Verb** forms proper (verbum finitum), expressing mode, tense, voice and **person**,
- Noun** forms (verbum infinitum expressing: —, (tense), voice and **case**).

170. Verb Forms with Personal Endings

| 3 modī | 6 tempora | 2 genera | 3 persōnae |
|--|--|--|---|
| Indicātīvus: (<i>mode of reality</i>) | Continued Action: Praesēns Imperfectum Fūtūrum I. | Actīvum: (<i>Subject represented as acting.</i>) | Person speaking: 1st ps. sg. and pl. |
| Coniūctīvus: (<i>mode of conception</i>) | Completed Action: Perfectum Plusquamperfectum Fūtūrum II. (exāctum) | Passīvum: (<i>Subject represented as acted upon</i>) (About the Dēpōnēns see n. 193.) | Person spoken to: 2d ps. sg. and pl. Person spoken about: 3d ps. sg. and pl. |

171. Noun Forms with Case Endings

| | | | |
|--|--|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Substantives: | { Infinitivus, Gerundium, Supinum. | Adjectives: | { Gerundivum, Participium. |
| Tenses: Praesens, Futurum, Perfectum. (See Note.) | | | |
| Voices: Activum, Passivum. | | | |
| Cases: Nominativus et casus obliqui. | | | |

Note: The noun-forms of the verb have no independent tenses; they denote action contemporaneous, subsequent, or prior to that of the finite verb.

172. INFLECTION OF THE VERB.

The forms of the Verb are derived from three Stems, the **Present Stem**, the **Perfect Stem**, and the **Participial Stem**, (177)

and, accordingly, comprise three systems,

the **Present System**, the **Perfect System** and the **Participial System**.

173. The manner of deriving verbal forms from the perfect and participial stems is the same for all Latin verbs; but there are **four** different types of derivation from the present stem, known as the **Four Conjugations**.

174. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

The four conjugations are distinguished by the endings of the **present infinite active**:

| | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1st: āre, | 2d: ēre, | 3d: ere, | 4th: īre, |
| laudāre, | monēre, | regere, | audīre, |
| <i>to praise,</i> | <i>to advise,</i> | <i>to rule,</i> | <i>to hear.</i> |

175. FORMS OF THE VERB PROPER (169.)

Every form of the verbum finitum consists of one of the three **stems** (172) and an **ending**.

The **ending** is made up of **signs** for mode, tense and person. The signs for mode and tense will be given in the single conjugations; the personal endings are contained in the following

176. TABLE OF PERSONAL ENDINGS

| Voices | Active | | | | | Active | | | |
|------------|-------------------|----------------|-------|-----------|------------------|--------------|------------|----------|--------|
| | Indicative | | | | Subj. | Pass. Depon. | Imperative | | Depon. |
| Modes | | | | | Indic. Subjunct. | | | | |
| Tenses | Pres. and II Fut. | Impf. Pluperf. | Perf. | All Tens. | All Tens. | | Present | Future | |
| 1st ps.sg. | o | m | ī | m | r | | — | — | — |
| 2d " " | s | s | isti | s | ris | no en'dg | tō | not used | re |
| 3d " " | t | t | it | t | tur | — | (tō) | — | — |
| 1st ps.pl. | mus | mus | mus | mus | mur | | — | — | — |
| 2d " " | tis | tis | istis | tis | mini | te | tōte | not used | mini |
| 3d " " | nt | nt | erunt | nt | ntur | — | (ntō) | — | — |

177.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Three forms of the verb are known as the *principal parts*, because they show the *three stems* from which all other forms are derived:

1. The **Present Infinitive Active**
2. The **Perfect Indicative Active**
3. The **Perfect Participle Passive**

| | Pres. Infinitive Act. | Perf. Indic. A. | Perf. Part. Pass. | |
|------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|
| I. | laud-ā-re | laudāv-ī | laudāt-um | <i>to praise</i> |
| II. | mon-ē-re | monu-ī | monit-um | <i>to advise</i> |
| III. | {reg-e-re | rēx-ī | rēct-um | <i>to rule</i> |
| | {cap-e-re | cēp-ī | capt-um | <i>to take</i> |
| IV. | aud-ī-re | audīv-ī | audīt-um | <i>to hear</i> |

Note: The **neuter** of the **perf. part. pass.** (alike in form with the supine act.) is chosen to represent the third principal part, because many verbs lack the masc. and fem. forms.

Where all forms of the **perf. part. pass.** are wanting, the **future participle active** in -ūrus, if it occurs, is given.

Many verbs lack the third stem, some both the second and third entirely.

178. The **1st ps. sg. of the pres. indic. act.**, the "**name**" of the verb in the Latin dictionaries, is easily formed from the first principal part:

laud-āre, mon-ēre, reg-ere, cap-ere, aud-īre
 laud-ō, mon-eō, reg-ō, cap-iō, aud-iō

Note: Those verbs which change ere to iō, are placed in a separate class.

Note: In **reciting the principal parts** the 1st ps. sg. pres. ind. act. is always mentioned together with the first princ. part:

laudāre, laudō, laudāvī, laudātum, *praise*
 or laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum, *praise*

179. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM

(containing the forms derived from the present stem)

I. Verb Forms

Four present tenses

Indic. and subjunct. act. and pass.

| laud- | mon- | reg- | cap- | aud- |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| ō, (ās) | eō, (ēs) | ō, (is) | iō, (is) | io (īs) |
| or | eor | or (eris) | ior, (eris) | ior |
| em , (ēs) | eam , (eās) | am (ās) | iam , (iās) | iam , (iās) |
| er | ear | ar | iar | iar |

Four imperfect tenses:

Indic. and subjunct. act. and pass.

| | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------------|-------|
| ābam | ēbam | ēbam | iēbam | iēbam |
| ābar | ēbar | ēbar | iēbar | iēbar |
| ārem | ērem | erem | erem | īrem |
| ārer | ērer | erer | erer | īrer |

The 1st future indic. act. and pass.

(The 1st and 2d futures form no subjunctive)

| | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|------------------|------------------|
| ābō | ēbō | am (ēs) | iam (iēs) | iam (iēs) |
| ābor | ēbor | ar (ēris) | iar (iēris) | iar (iēris) |

The imperative active (Pass. not used.)

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ā | ē | e | e | ī |
|---|---|---|---|---|

II. Noun Forms

The present infin. act. and pass.

| | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| āre | ēre | ere | ere | īre |
| ārī | ērī | ī | ī | īrī |

The present participle active

(The pres. part. forms no passive)

| | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|
| āns | ēns | ēns | iēns | iēns |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|

The gerund and the gerundive

| | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| andī | endī | endī | iendī | iendī |
| andus | endus | endus | iendus | iendus |

180. SYNOPSIS OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM

containing five verb-forms and one noun-form of the

Active Voice

Perfect indicative and subjunctive

Plupf. indicative and subjunctive

2d Fut. indicative (no subjunctive)

Perfect infinitive:

laudāv-, monu-, rēx-, cēp-, audīv-

| | |
|------|-------|
| ī | erim |
| eram | issem |
| erō | — |
| | isse |

181. SYNOPSIS OF THE PARTICIPIAL SYSTEM

containing

I. Five verb-forms of the

Passive Voice:

Perfect indicative and subjunctive

Plupf. indicative and subjunctive

2d Fut. indicative (no subjunctive):

laudāt-, monit-, rēct-, capt-, audīt-

us, a, um; ī, ae, a

| | |
|------|-------|
| sum | sim |
| eram | essem |
| erō | — |

II. Seven noun-forms:

Perf. participle passive: **us** etc., ī etc.

Perf. infinitive passive: um etc., ōs etc. **esse**

Fut. participle active: **ūrus** etc., ūrī etc.

Fut. infinitive active: ūsum etc., ūrōs etc. **esse**

1st and 2d supines: **um**, ū (unchangeable)

Fut. infinitive passive: um **īrī** (unchangeable)

laudāre, laudō, laudāvi, laudātum *praise*

ACTIVUM

| | Indicātīvus | | Coniūctīvus |
|-------------|--|---|--|
| Praesens | laud-ō, laud-ās, laud-at, | <i>I praise, am praising, do p. thou praisest (you praise) he (she, it) praises</i> | laud-em laud-ēs laud-et |
| | laud-āmus, laud-ātis, laud-ant, | <i>we praise you praise they praise</i> | laud-ēmus laud-ētis laud-ent |
| Imperfectum | laud-ābam, laud-ābās, laud-ābat, | <i>I was praising, praised thou wast (you were) praising he was praising</i> | laud-ārem laud-ārēs laud-āret |
| | laud-ābāmus, laud-ābātis, laud-ābant, | <i>we were praising you were praising they were praising</i> | laud-ārēmus laud-ārētis laud-ārent |
| Futūrum I. | laud-ābō, laud-ābis, laud-ābit, | <i>I shall praise you will praise he will praise</i> | |
| | laud-ābimus, laud-ābitis, laud-ābunt, | <i>we shall praise you will praise they will praise</i> | |
| Perfectum | laudāv-ī, laudāv-istī, laudāv-it, | I praised, I have praised <i>you praised he praised</i> | laudāv-erim laudāv-eris laudāv-erit |
| | laudāv-imus, laudāv-istis, laudāv-ērunt, | <i>we praised you praised they praised</i> | laudāv-erimus laudāv-eritis laudāv-erint |

183. The subjunctive is used to express e. g.:

Cause } **cum** laudem *since I praise*
(all ps.) } **cum** nōn laudem *since I do not praise*

Result } **ut** laudem *(so) that I praise*
(all ps.) } **ut** nōn laudem *(so) that I do not praise*

CONJUGATION

laudāre, laudō, laudāvi, laudātum *praise*

PASSIVUM

| Indicātīvus | | Coniūctīvus |
|--|---|---|
| laud-or, laud-āris, laud-ātur, | <i>I am praised, being p'd you are praised he is praised</i> | laud-er laud-ēris laud-ētur |
| laud-āmur, laud-āmini, laud-antur, | <i>we are praised you are praised they are praised</i> | laud-ēmur laud-ēmini lāud-entur |
| laud-ābar, laud-ābāris, laud-ābātur, | <i>I was (being) praised you were praised he was praised</i> | laud-ārer laud-ārēris laud-ārētur |
| laud-ābāmur, laud-ābāmini, laud-ābantur, | <i>we were praised you were praised they were praised</i> | laud-ārēmur laud-ārēmini laud-ārentur |
| laud-ābor, laud-āberis, laud-ābitur, | <i>I shall be praised you will be praised he will be praised</i> | |
| laud-ābimur, laud-ābimini, laud-ābuntur, | <i>we shall be praised you will be praised they will be praised</i> | |
| laudāt-us sum, I was praised, have b. p., a } es, <i>you were praised</i> um } est, <i>he was praised</i> | | laud-atus sim a } sīs um } sit |
| laudāt-ī sumus, <i>we were praised</i> ae } estis, <i>you were praised</i> a } sunt, <i>they were praised</i> | | laud-ātī simus ae } sītis a } sint |

Purpose \ ut laudem, (*in order*) to praise; that I praise
(all ps.) } nē laudem, **not to p., lest** I p., that I do **not** p.

Exhortation \ laudēmus, **let us praise**
(1st pers.) } nē laudēmus, **let us not praise**

| ACTIVUM | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Indicātīvus | | Coniūctīvus | |
| Plusquamperf. | laudāv-eram, | <i>I had praised</i> | laudāv-issem |
| | laudāv-erās, | <i>you had praised</i> | laudāv-issēs |
| | laudāv-erat, | <i>he had praised</i> | laudāv-isset |
| Plūsquamperf. | laudāv-erāmus, | <i>we had praised</i> | laudāv-issēmus |
| | laudāv-erātis, | <i>you had praised</i> | laudāv-issētis |
| | laudāv-erant, | <i>they had praised</i> | laudāv-issent |
| Fütürum I. | laudāv-erō, | <i>I shall have praised</i> | |
| | laudāv-eris, | <i>you will have praised</i> | |
| | laudāv-erit | <i>he will have praised</i> | |
| Fütürum I. | laudāv-erimus, | <i>he shall have praised</i> | |
| | laudāv-eritis, | <i>he will have praised</i> | |
| | laudāv-erint, | <i>they will have praised</i> | |
| Imperative | Pre.: laud-ā | <i>praise thou</i> | laud-āte <i>praise ye</i> |
| | Ft. : laud-ātō | <i>thou shalt pr.</i> | laud-ātōte <i>ye shall praise</i> |
| | Ft. : (laud-ātō | <i>he shall praise</i> | laud-antō <i>they shall pr.</i> |
| Infinitive | Pre.: laud-āre | <i>to praise</i> | |
| | Pf. : laud-āvisse | <i>to have praised</i> | |
| | Ft. : laud-ātūrum etc. esse | <i>to be about to pr.</i> | (181, II) |
| Participle | Pre.: laud-āns, (laudantis, 52) | <i>praising</i> | |
| | Pf. : — | — | |
| | Ft. : laudāt-ūrus, etc. | <i>about to praise</i> | (181, II) |
| Gerund | Nom.: (laud-āre) | <i>(praising, to praise)</i> | |
| | Acc. : (ad) laud-andum | <i>(to or for) praising</i> | |
| | Gen. : laud-andī | <i>of praising</i> | |
| | Dat. : laud-andō (rare); | <i>to or for praising</i> | |
| | Abl. : laud-andō | <i>by praising</i> | |
| Supine I. laudāt-um <i>in order to praise</i> (only with verbs of motion) | | | |
| Supine II. laudāt-ū <i>to praise</i> (only after fās, facilis etc.) | | | |

185. (Tū = subject **nom.**) es puer probus
 Putō tē (subject **acc.**) esse puerum probum
I believe you to be an honest boy

CONJUGATION

PASSIVUM

| Indicātīvus | | | Coniūctīvus | | | |
|-------------|---|---------------|--------------------------------|-----------|---|---------|
| laudāt-us | } | eram, | <i>I had been praised</i> | laudāt-us | } | essem |
| a | | erās, | <i>you had been praised</i> | a | | essēs |
| um | | erat, | <i>he had been praised</i> | um | | esset |
| laudāt-ī | } | erāmus, | <i>we had been praised</i> | laudāt-ī | } | essēmus |
| ae | | erātis, | <i>you had been praised</i> | ae | | essētis |
| a | | erant, | <i>they had been pr.</i> | a | | essent |
| laudāt-us | } | erō, | <i>I shall have been pr.</i> | | | |
| a | | eris, | <i>you will h. b. praised</i> | | | |
| um | | erit, | <i>he will h. b. praised</i> | | | |
| laudāt-ī | } | erimus, | <i>we shall h. b. praised</i> | | | |
| ae | | eritis, | <i>you will h. b. praised</i> | | | |
| a | | erunt, | <i>they will h. b. praised</i> | | | |

Not used

I. praesentis : laudā-rī *to be praised*
 I. perfectī : laudāt-um etc., esse *to have been praised*
 I. futūrī : laudāt-**um** īrī (181, II.) *to be about to be pr.*

P. praesentis : —
 P. perfectī : laudāt-us etc. *praised, having been praised*
 P. futūrī : —

Gerun- : laud-andus etc. ⁽¹⁾(*he, she, it*) that **must** be pr'd)
dīvum ⁽²⁾**deserving** to be praised

| | |
|---|--|
| Putō patrem laud-āre | <i>I think (that) the father pr's</i> |
| putō eum laud-āvisse | <i>I think (that) he (has)praised</i> |
| putō eum laud-āturum esse | <i>I think (that) he will praise</i> |
| putō puerōs laud-ārī | <i>I think (that) the boys are p.</i> |
| putō cōs laud-ātos esse | <i>I think (that) they have been praised</i> |
| Putō mātre m laud-āt um īrī | <i>I think (that) the mother will be praised</i> |

186. Laud-āturus sum *I am about to praise*
 Laud-andus sum *I must be praised*
 Laud-andum est *One must praise (192)*

monēre, monuī, monitum *to advise*

ACTIVUM

| | Indicātīvus | Coniūctīvus |
|----------|---|-------------|
| Pres. | mon-eō, <i>I advise, am ad., do ad.</i> | mon-eam |
| | mon-ēs, <i>you advise</i> | mon-eās |
| | mon-et, <i>he advises</i> | mon-eat |
| | mon-ēmus, <i>we advise</i> | mon-eāmus |
| | mon-ētis, <i>you advise</i> | mon-eātis |
| | mon-ent, <i>they advise</i> | mon-eant |
| Impf. | mon-ēbam, <i>I was advising</i> | mon-ērem |
| Fut. I. | mon-ēbo, <i>I shall advise</i> | |
| Perf. | monu-ī, <i>I advised, have ad.</i> | monu-erim |
| Plup. | monu-eram, <i>I had advised</i> | monu-issem |
| Fut. II. | monu-erō, <i>I shall have adv'd</i> | |

Impera-
tive { Pre.: mon-ē *advise thou,* mon-ēte *advise ye*
 { Ft. : { mon-ētō *thou shalt adv.* mon-ētōte *ye shall ad.*
 { (mon-ētō *he shall advise* mon-entō *they shall advise*)

Infini-
tive { Pre.: mon-ēre *to advise*
 { Pf. : monu-isse *to have advised*
 { Ft. : monit-ūrum etc. esse *to be about to advise*

Parti-
ciple { Pre.: mon-ēns (mon-entis, 52) *advising*
 { Pf. : ———
 { Ft. : monit-ūrus etc. *about to advise*

Ger-
und { Nom.: (mon-ēre) *(advising, to advise)*
 { Acc. : ad mon-endum *(to or for) advising*
 { Gen. : mon-endī *of advising*
 { Dat. : mon-endō *to or for advising*
 { Abl. : mon-endō *by advising*

Supine I. monit-um *in order to advise* (only with verbs of motion)

Supine II. monit-ū*to advise* (only after fās, facilis etc.)

CONJUGATION

monēre, monuī, monitum *to advise*

PASSIVUM

| Indicātīvus | | Coniūctīvus |
|---------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| mon-eor | <i>I am advised</i> | mon-ear |
| mon-ēris | <i>you are advised</i> | mon-eāris |
| mon-ētur | <i>he is advised</i> | mon-eātur |
| mon-ēmur | <i>we are advised</i> | mon-eāmur |
| mon-ēminī | <i>you are advised</i> | mon-eāminī |
| mon-entur | <i>they are advised</i> | mon-eantur |
| mon-ēbar | <i>I was (being) advised</i> | mon-ērer |
| mon-ēbor | <i>I shall be advised</i> | |
| monit-us sum | <i>I have been advised</i> | monit-us sim |
| monit-us eram | <i>I had been advised</i> | monit-us essem |
| monit-us erō | <i>I shall have been advised</i> | |

Not used

mon-ērī *to be advised*
monit-um etc., esse *to have been advised*
monit-**um** irī (unchangeable) *to be about to be advised*

monit-us etc. *advised, having been advised*

Gerundivum: mon-endus { (he, she, it) **that must be ad.**
deserving to be advised

Note: The forms of monēre in the indicative and subjunctive, beginning with the imperfect, correspond to those of laudare (179-181; 176),

mon-ē-, monu-, monit- taking the place
of laud-ā-, laudāv-, laudāt- (the endings being alike.)

regere, rēxī, rēctum, to rule

ACTIVUM

| Indicātivus | | | Coniūctivus | |
|---|-------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Pres. | reg-ō | <i>I rule, am ruling, do</i> | reg- am | |
| | reg-is | <i>you rule</i> [rule] | reg-ās | |
| | reg-it | <i>he rules</i> | reg-at | |
| | reg-imus | <i>we rule</i> | reg-āmus | |
| | reg-itis | <i>you rule</i> | reg-ātis | |
| | reg-unt | <i>they rule</i> | reg-ant | |
| Impf. | reg-ēbam <i>I was ruling</i> | | rég- erem | |
| Fut. I. | <i>I shall rule</i> | | | |
| | reg- am | reg-ēmus | | |
| | reg-ēs | reg-ētis | | |
| | reg-et | reg-ent | | |
| Perf. | rēx-ī | <i>I ruled, have ruled</i> | rēx- erim | |
| Plup. | rēx-eram | <i>I had ruled</i> | rēx- issem | |
| Fut. II. | rēx-erō | <i>I shall have ruled</i> | | |
| Impera- tive | Pre.: reg-e | <i>rule thou,</i> | rég-ite | <i>rule ye</i> |
| | Ft. : { rég-itō | <i>thou shalt rule</i> | reg-itōte | <i>ye shall rule</i> |
| | { (reg-itō | <i>he shall rule</i> | reg-untō | <i>they shall rule</i> |
| Infini- tive | Pre.: rég-ere | | <i>to rule</i> | |
| | Pf. : rēx-isse | | <i>to have ruled</i> | |
| | Ft. : rēct-ūrum etc. esse | | <i>to be about to rule</i> | |
| Parti- ciple | Pre.: reg-ēns (reg-entis, 52) | | <i>ruling</i> | |
| | Pf. : _____ | | _____ | |
| | Ft. : rēct-ūrus etc. | | <i>about to rule</i> | |
| Ger- und | Nom.: (reg-ere) | | <i>(ruling, to rule)</i> | |
| | Acc. : (ad) reg-endum | | <i>(to or for) ruling</i> | |
| | Gen. : reg-endī | | <i>of ruling</i> | |
| | Dat. : reg-endō | | <i>to or for ruling</i> | |
| | Abl. : reg-endō | | <i>by ruling</i> | |
| Supine I. rēct-um <i>in order to rule</i> (only with verbs of motion) | | | | |
| Supine II. rēct-ū <i>to rule</i> (only after fās, facilis etc.) | | | | |

CONJUGATION

regere, rēxi, rēctum *to rule*

PASSIVUM

| Indicātīvus | Coniūctīvus |
|--|---------------|
| reg-or <i>I am ruled</i> | reg-ar |
| rég-eris | reg-āris |
| reg-itur | reg-ātur |
| reg-imur | reg-āmur |
| reg-iminī | reg-āminī |
| reg-untur | reg-antur |
| regēbar <i>I was (being) ruled</i> | rég-erer |
| <i>I shall be ruled</i> | |
| reg-ar reg-ēmur | |
| reg-eris reg-ēminī | |
| reg-ētur reg-entur | |
| rēct-us sum <i>I was ruled</i> | rēct-us sim |
| rēct-us eram <i>I had been ruled</i> | rēct-us essem |
| rēct-us erō <i>I shall have been ruled</i> | |

Not used

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| reg-ī | <i>to be ruled</i> |
| rēct-um etc. esse | <i>to have been ruled</i> |
| rēct-um irī (unchangeable) | <i>to be about to be ruled</i> |

| | |
|--------------|---------------------------------|
| rēct-us etc. | <i>ruled, having been ruled</i> |
|--------------|---------------------------------|

Gerun- regendus etc. ¹(*he, she, it*) that **must** be ruled ;
dīvum ²**deserving** to be ruled

Note : The forms of regere in the indicative and subjunctive, except those of the *present* and *future* tenses, resemble the corresponding forms of laudāre (179-181; 176)

reg-ē, reg-e, rēx-, rēct- taking the place
of laud-ā laudāv- laudāt- (the endings being alike).

audire, audīvī, audītum to hear

ACTIVUM

| | Indicātīvus | Coniūctīvus |
|------------|--|----------------------------------|
| Pres. | and-iō <i>I hear, am hearing, do hear</i> | aud-iam |
| | aud-īs <i>you hear</i> | aud-iās |
| | aud-it <i>he hears</i> | aud-iat |
| | aud-īmus <i>we hear</i> | aud-iāmus |
| | aud-ītis <i>you hear</i> | aud-iātis |
| | aud-iunt <i>they hear</i> | aud-iant |
| Impf. | aud-iēbam <i>I was hearing</i> | aud-irem |
| Fut. I. | <i>I shall hear</i> | |
| | aud-iam audiēmus | |
| | aud-iēs audiētis | |
| | aud-iet audient | |
| Perf. | audīv-ī <i>I heard, have h.</i> | audīv-erim |
| Plup. | audīv-eram <i>I have heard</i> | audīv-issem |
| Fut. II | audīv-erō <i>I shall have h.</i> | |
| Imperative | Pre.: aud-ī <i>hear thou</i> | aud-īte <i>hear ye</i> |
| | Ft. : aud-ītō <i>thou shalt h.</i> | aud-ītōte <i>ye shall hear</i> |
| | Ft. : aud-ītō <i>he shall hear</i> | aud-iuntō <i>they shall hear</i> |
| Infinitive | Pre.: aud-īre | <i>to hear</i> |
| | Pf. : audīv-isse etc. | <i>to have heard</i> |
| | Ft. : audīt-ūrum esse | <i>to be about to hear</i> |
| Participle | Pre.: aud-iēns, (audientes, 52) | <i>hearing</i> |
| | Pf. : — | — |
| | Ft. : audīt-ūrus, etc. | <i>about to hear</i> |
| Gerundive | Nom.: (aud-īre) | <i>(hearing, to hear)</i> |
| | Acc. : (ad) aud-iendum | <i>(to or for) hearing</i> |
| | Gen. : aud-iendī | <i>of hearing</i> |
| | Dat. : aud-iendō | <i>to or for hearing</i> |
| | Abl. : aud-iendō | <i>by hearing</i> |
| Supine I. | audīt-um <i>in order to hear</i> (only with verbs of motion) | |
| Supine II. | audīt-ūto hear (only after fās, facilis etc.) | |

CONJUGATION

audire, audīvī, audītum *to hear*

PASSIVUM

| Indicātīvus | | Coniūctīvus |
|---|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| aud-ior | <i>I am heard</i> | aud-iar |
| aud-īris | | aud-iāris |
| aud-ītur | | aud-iātur |
| aud-īmur | | aud-iāmur |
| aud-īminī | | aud-iāminī |
| aud-iuntur | | aud-iantur |
| aud-iēbar | <i>I was (being) heard</i> | aud-irer |
| | <i>I shall be heard</i> | |
| aud-iar | aud-iēmur | |
| aud-iēris | aud-iēminī | |
| aud-iētur | aud-ientur | |
| audīt-us sum | <i>I was (have been) heard</i> | audīt-us sim |
| audīt-us eram | <i>I had been h.</i> | audīt-us essem |
| audīt-us erō | <i>I shall have b. h.</i> | |
| <i>Not used</i> | | |
| aud-irī | | <i>to be heard</i> |
| audīt-um esse | | <i>to have been heard</i> |
| audīt-um irī (unchangeable) | | <i>to be about to be heard</i> |
| — | | — |
| audīt-us etc. | | <i>heard, having been h.</i> |
| — | | — |
| Gerundivum : audiendus etc. { ¹ (he, she, it) that must be h. { ² deserving to be heard | | |

Note: The forms of audire in the indicative and subjunctive *except* those of the *present* and *future* tenses, resemble the corresponding forms of laudāre (179-181; 176),

audiē-, audī-, audīv-, audīt-, taking the place
of laudā laudāv laudāt (the endings being alike.)

190. VERBS OF THE 3d CONJUGATION IN IO AND IOR

| capere, capiō, cēpī, captum, <i>to take</i> | | | | |
|---|--|---|----------------------|-----------------|
| Actīvum | | | Passīvum | |
| | Indicātīvus | Coniūctīv. | Indicātīvus | Coniūctīv. |
| Praes. | cap-iō | cap-iam | cap-ior | cap-iar |
| | cap-is | cap-iās | cap-eris | cap-iāris |
| | cap-it | cap-iat | cap-itur | cap-iātur |
| | cap-imus | cap-iāmus | cap-imur | cap-iāmur |
| | cap-itis | cap-iātis | cap-imini | cap-iāmini |
| | cap-iunt | cap-iant | cap-iuntur | cap-iantur |
| Impf. | cap-iēbam | cap-erem | cap-iēbar | cap-erer |
| Fut. I. | cap-iam cap-iēs | | cap-iar cap-iēris | |
| Impe- rat. | { Praes. cap-e , cap-ite Fūt. { cap-itō, cap-itōte (cap-itō, cap-iuntō) | <i>not used</i> | | |
| Infini- tivus | { Praes. cap-ere Perf. cēp-isse Fūt. capt-ūrum etc. esse | cap-ī capt-um etc. esse capt-um irī | | |
| Parti- cipium | { Praes. cap-iēns (ientis, 52) Perf. — Fūt. capt-ūrus | — capt-us — | | |
| Gerundium | (ad) cap-iendum | Gerundivum: cap-iendus, a, um | | |

Note: In every form of the present system (179) the final consonant of the stem is immediately followed by **one i**, **except** in the present passive form *caperis*

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| all imperf. subj. forms | <i>caperem, caperer, etc.</i> |
| the imperative form | <i>cape</i> |
| the infinitive form | <i>capere</i> |

The perfect and participial systems are regular (180, 181):

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| <i>cēp-ī,</i> | <i>cēp-eram,</i> | <i>cēp-erō etc.</i> |
| <i>capt-us,</i> | <i>capt-ūrus,</i> | <i>capt-um etc.</i> |

191.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The **active** periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the participle in **urus** with the verb **sum**, and denotes an action which is imminent, or **about to** take place.

The **passive** periphrastic conjugation is formed by combining the gerundive in **ndus** with the verb **sum**, and denotes an action which is necessary, or **must** take place.

| Coniugātiō periphrastica āctīva | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Indic. | laudātūrus sum (eram...) | <i>I am (was..) about to praise</i> |
| Coni. | laudātūrus sim (essem...) | |
| Infin. | { laudātūrum etc. esse | <i>to be about to praise</i> |
| | { laudātūrum etc. fuisse | <i>to have been about to praise</i> |
| Coniugātiō periphrastica passīva | | |
| Indic. | { laudandus sum | { <i>I am to be, must be pr.</i> |
| | { laudandus eram | { <i>I ought to be, deserve</i> |
| | { laudandus erō | <i>I was to be, had., deserved...</i> <i>I shall deserve to be praised</i> |
| Coni. | laudandus sim (essem...) | |
| Infin. | { laudandum etc. esse | { <i>to deserve to be praised</i> |
| | { laudandum etc. fuisse | { <i>to be such as is to be praised</i> <i>to have deserved to be pr.</i> |

192. Note: 1. A “periphrastic” form is a “round about way of speaking.”

2. The subjunctives in **ūrus sūm** supply the wanting *subjunctives* of the **fūtūrum I**.

3. **Transitive** verbs have **all** forms of the gerundive: **us, a, um; ī, ae, a; intransitive** verbs have **only** the neuter sg. in **um** (with **est**).

The **doer** of the action expressed by the gerundive is put in the **dative**, except, when it has an object-dative:

Puer **mihi** laudandus est { *The boy must be praised by me,*
 { i. e.: *I must praise the boy*

litterae eī scribendae sunt *he must write a letter*

cōnātū dēsistendum est *the attempt must be given up*

lēgī ā tē parendum est *you must obey the law*

laudandum nōn est { *it is necessary not to praise*
 { *it is imprudent, unlawful to praise*

193. VERBA DEPONENTIA: DEPONENTS

Deponents are verbs which have “put aside” (dēpōnere) the active forms that they formerly had.

| hortārī, hortātus sum, to exhort | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------|
| Indicātīvus | | | Coniūctīvus |
| Praes. | hortor hortāris etc. | <i>I exhort you exhort</i> | hortēr hortēris etc. |
| Impf. | hortābar | <i>I was exhorting</i> | hortārer |
| Fūt. I. | hortābor | <i>I shall exhort</i> | — |
| Perf. | hortātus sum | <i>I exhorted, have e.</i> | hortātus sim |
| Plūp. | hortātus eram | <i>I had exhorted</i> | hortātus essem |
| Fūt. II. | hortātus erō | <i>I shall have exh.</i> | — |
| Imperāt perf. “ fūt. | hortāre <i>exhort thou</i> hortāminī <i>exhort ye</i> not used | | |
| Infīn. praes. | hortārī | <i>to exhort</i> | |
| Infīn. perf. | hortātum etc. esse | <i>to have exhorted</i> | |
| Infīn. fūt. | hortātūrum etc. esse | <i>to be about to exhort</i> | |
| Partic. praes. | hortāns (antis, 52) | <i>exhorting</i> | |
| Partic. perf. | hortātus etc. | having <i>exhorted</i> | |
| Partic. fūt. | hortātūrus etc. | <i>about to exhort</i> | |
| Gerundium | ad hortandum..... | <i>to or for exhorting</i> | |
| Gerundivum | hortandus etc | (he etc.) that must be exhorted | |
| Supīnum I. | hortātum, | <i>in order to exhort</i> | |
| Supīnum II. | hortātū | <i>.....to exhort</i> | |

194. The deponents have the following **forms**:

1) **all passive** forms, except the infinitive in īrī;

2) **some active** forms:

the future infinitive : hortātūrum esse
the pres. and fut. participles : hortāns, hortātūrus
the gerund : ad hortandum.....
the supines : hortātum, hortātū

195. All forms of the deponents have **active meaning** except the **gerundive** which has **passive meaning**.

196. DEPONENTS OF THE 2d, 3d AND 4th CONJUGATIONS.

II. verērī, veritus sum, *feel awe of*
Imperative: verēre, verēminī (193)

III. sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
Present : sequor, sequeris
Imperative: séquere, sequiminī

patī, passus sum, *suffer*
Present : patior, pateris
Imperative: pátere, patiminī

IV. partīrī, partitus sum *share*
Imperative: partīre, partīminī

197. PASSIVE OF DEPONENTS

The passive of deponents is supplied by synonymous expressions or circumlocutions, e. g.:

| Active | | Passive |
|------------|----------------|--|
| hortārī, | admīrārī | monērī, laudārī |
| sūspicārī, | <i>suspect</i> | in sūspiciōnem vocārī |
| oblīvīscī, | <i>forget</i> | oblīviōne obruī |
| aggredi, | <i>attack</i> | fit impetus in hostēs |
| admīrārī, | <i>admire</i> | { rēs admīrātiōnem habet rēs admīrātiōnī est reī admīrātiō est |

Note: Some perfect participles of deponents are both active and passive in meaning; when passive, they are not employed to form tenses:

Passive meaning

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| pater filiō comitātus | <i>accompanied by his son</i> |
| exercitus partītus | <i>divided army</i> |
| agrī dēpopulātī | <i>devastated lands</i> |
| scelus meditātum | <i>premeditated crime</i> |
| malā opīnāta | <i>imagined evils</i> |

198. SEMIDEPONENTIA: SEMIDEPONENTS

Semideponents have only some passive forms with active meaning, either in the perfect or in the present system:

| | | | |
|-----------|------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| a. Solēre | solitus sum | to be wont | S. dicere |
| audēre | ausus sum | venture | Au. dicere |
| gaudēre | gāvīsus sum | rejoice | G. libertāte |
| fīdere | fīsus sum | { rely on trust | { Tibi, virtūtī or virtūte |
| cōnfīdere | cōnfīsus sum | | |
| diffīdere | diffīsus sum | distrust | Tibi, virtūtī |
| b. Merērī | { meruī meritus sum | deserve | Bene dē tē m. |
| pacīsci | { pepigī pāctus sum | make a contract | Rem p. |
| revertī | revertī | return | Reversūrus |
| dēverti | dēvertī | lodge | Dēversūrus |

Note : 1. Reversus, *having returned*
 2. { gāvīsus, fīsus, diffīsus
 { rejoicing, trusting, distrusting

Soleō, audeō, gaudeō

Fidō, cōnfidō, diffidō:

Then mereor, pacīscor,

Revertor and dēvertor.

199. PASSIVE PARTICIPLES WITH ACTIVE MEANING

| | | |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Cēnātus, | having dined; | after dinner |
| prānsus, | having breakfasted; | after breakfast |
| iūrātus, | having sworn; | (also pass.: sworn) |
| pōtus, | having drunk; | (also pass.: drunk) |

200. PASSIVE PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES ONLY

| | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| adultus, | grown up | nūpta, | married |
| assuētus, | accustomed | obsolētus, | worn out, obsolete |
| inveterātus, | deep-rooted | praeteritus, | past |
| | error inveterātus, | | a deep-rooted error |
| | annus praeteritus, | | the past year |

201. NEUTRALIA PASSIVA: NEUTRAL PASSIVE VERBS

Fierī, perīre, vñīre are active in form and apparently passive in meaning (234, 237).

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION

202. a. The ending **re** is used instead of **ris** in the 2d ps. sg. of the **passive** and the **deponent**; when no ambiguity arises:

laudāris, laudēris, laudābāris, laudārēris, laudāberis

— laudēre, laudābāre, laudārēre, laudābere

hortāris, hortēre, hortābāre, hortārēre, hortābere

b. In the perfect system

vi is dropped before **s**,

laudāsse -āssem -āstī,

dēlēsse -ēssem -ēstī,

cognōsse -ōssem -ōstī,

audīsse -īssem -īstī,

ve and **v** before **r**,

-ārunt -ārim -āram -ārō

-ērunt -ērim -ēram -ērō

-ōrunt -ōrim -ōram -ōrō

-iērunt -ierim -ieram -ierō

Note: Lavāre, iuvāre, cavēre retain the **v** of their stems.

Note: Ere is sometimes used instead of ērunt:

laudavēre = laudāvērunt

203. The present imperatives of dīcere, dūcere, facere, ferre drop the **e**: dīc, dūc, fac, fer; also their compounds, except those of facere:

(maledīc), ēdūc, éffer (8, c)

éffice, intérfice, calfáce (8, c)

204. The future imperative (laudātō, laudantō) is found in laws and with poets only; in classical prose the present subjunctive is used instead:

laudet, laudent, *he, they shall praise*

Exception: Of scīre only scītō and scītōte are used as imperatives.

205.

LIST OF VERBS

The verbs of each conjugation are classified chiefly according to the different formations of the perfects:

1. Perfects formed by v, u, s;
2. Perfects formed by reduplication;
3. Perfects formed by lengthening or ablaut of the root-vowel;
4. Perfects without apparent change of stem.

Note: a. It will prove useful to recite all the **three systems** (179-181), e, g.:

sectus, sectum esse
sectūrus, sectūrum esse
sectum, sectum īrī

or the groups of infinitives, participles etc.:

| | | |
|--------|---------------------------------|------------|
| e. g.: | <i>praising</i> | laudāns |
| | <i>being praised</i> | wanting |
| | <i>having praised</i> | wanting |
| | <i>(having been) praised</i> | laudātus |
| | <i>about to praise</i> | laudātūrus |
| | <i>one that must be praised</i> | laudandus |

b. Before enumerating the passive forms of a verb, state whether it is transitive, forming a complete passive as **laudor, laudaris, laudatur**

or intransitive, forming an impersonal passive only, as **saltātur**, *there is dancing*

206.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Like laudāre:

| | | | |
|------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| conclāmāre | <i>shout</i> | collocāre | <i>place</i> |
| commūtāre | <i>change</i> | commemorāre | <i>mention</i> |
| dēclārāre | <i>make clear</i> | dissipāre | <i>disperse</i> |
| dēclīnāre | <i>turn aside</i> | explicāre | <i>unfold</i> |
| dēfatīgāre | <i>tire</i> | flāgitāre | <i>entreat</i> |
| explōrāre | <i>explore</i> | nāvigāre | <i>(set) sail</i> |
| ignōrāre | <i>not know</i> | occupāre | <i>seize</i> |
| salūtāre | <i>greet</i> | renovāre | <i>renew</i> |
| conclāmō | | cóllócō | |

FIRST CONJUGATION: āre, ō

Perfect formed by v

| | | | | |
|--------|--------|-------|--------------------|-----------------|
| pōtāre | pōtāvī | pōtum | <i>drink, tope</i> | See potus: 199. |
|--------|--------|-------|--------------------|-----------------|

Perfects formed by u

| | | | | |
|------------------------|---------|-----------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| cubāre | cubūī | cubitum | <i>recline</i> | Excubare |
| domāre | domūī | domitum | <i>tame</i> | (<i>keep</i>) <i>watch</i> |
| vetāre | vetūī | vétitum | <i>forbid</i> | Veto te scribere |
| ⁵ increpāre | -crepūī | -crepitum | <i>rebuke</i> | |
| secāre | secūī | sectum | <i>cut</i> | Desecare, <i>cut off</i> |
| micāre | micūī | —(177,n.) | { <i>gleam</i> <i>quiver</i> } | |
| dimicāre | -micāvī | -micātum | <i>fight</i> | |
| sonāre | sonūī | — | <i>sound</i> | Resonare, <i>resound</i> |
| ¹⁰ tonāre | tonūī | — | <i>thunder</i> | |

Perfects formed by Reduplication

| | | | | |
|------|------|-------|-------------|-----------------------|
| dare | dedī | datum | <i>give</i> | Do tibi librum |
|------|------|-------|-------------|-----------------------|

Only dā, dās, dāns have ā

| | | | | |
|------------|-------|--------|-----------------|--|
| circūmdare | -dedī | -datum | <i>surround</i> | |
|------------|-------|--------|-----------------|--|

The other compounds of dare belong to
the 3d Conjugation

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------|-----------|---|---|
| stāre | stetī | stātūrus | <i>stand</i> | |
| circumstāre | -stetī | — | <i>stand around</i> | Te circumstant |
| ¹⁵ praestāre | -stitī | -stātūrus | { <i>excel</i> <i>vouch for</i> <i>fulfil</i> } | Tibi virtute p. Te, aliquid p. Officium p. |
| cōnstāre | -stitī | -stātūrus | { <i>consist</i> <i>cost</i> } | Constamus ex animo et corpore |
| dīstāre | — | — | <i>be distant</i> | |

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

| | | | | |
|----------------------|-------|---------|-------------|--|
| iuvāre | iūvī | (iūtum) | <i>help</i> | Iuvo te |
| adiuvāre, | -iūvī | adiūtum | <i>help</i> | |
| ²⁰ lavāre | lāvī | lau tum | <i>wash</i> | Lauta suppellex <i>splendid furniture</i> |

SECOND CONJUGATION: ēre, eō

Perfects formed by *v*

| | | | |
|------------------------|--------|---------|------------------|
| dēlēre | dēlēvī | dēlētum | <i>destroy</i> |
| flēre | flēvī | fletum | <i>weep</i> |
| deflere | -flevī | -fletum | <i>weep over</i> |
| nēre | nēvī | nētum | <i>spin</i> |
| ²⁵ complēre | -plēvī | -plētum | <i>fill up</i> |
| ciēre | (cīvī) | (cītum) | <i>rouse</i> |
| accīre | accīvī | accītum | <i>summon</i> |

Mortem patris
defleo.Percitus,
greatly rousedPerfects formed by *u*

| | | | |
|--------------------------|---------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| arcēre | arcuī | — | <i>keep off (tr.)</i> |
| coercere | coercuī | coercitum | <i>curb</i> |
| ³⁰ exercere | exercuī | exercitum | <i>vex, harass</i> |
| exercere | exercuī | exercitatum | <i>train</i> |
| habēre | habuī | habitum | <i>have</i> |
| adhibere | -hibuī | -hibitum | <i>use (ad)</i> |
| prohibere | -hibuī | -hibitum | <i>keep off (tr.)</i> |
| ³⁵ debere | debuī | debitum | <i>owe, ought</i> |
| praebere | praebuī | praebitum | <i>offer, grant</i> |
| admonēre | -monuī | -monitum | <i>{admonish remind</i> |
| nocēre | nocuī | nocitum | <i>harm</i> |
| placēre | placuī | placitum | <i>please</i> |
| ⁴⁰ displicere | -plicuī | -plicitum | <i>displease</i> |
| tacere | tacuī | tacitum | <i>be silent</i> |
| reticēre | -ticuī | — | <i>conceal</i> |
| terrēre | terruī | territum | <i>frighten</i> |
| detertere | -terruī | -territum | <i>deter</i> |
| ⁴⁵ cēnsēre | cēnsuī | cēnsuī | <i>estimate</i> |
| suscēnsēre | -cēnsuī | — | <i>be angry</i> |
| docēre | docuī | doctum | <i>teach</i> |
| miscēre | miscuī | mixtum | <i>mix</i> |
| tenēre | tenuī | — | <i>hold</i> |
| ⁵⁰ abstinēre | -tinuī | — | <i>abstain</i> |
| continere | -tinuī | — | <i>hold together</i> |
| pertinere | -tinuī | — | <i>extend (i.)</i> |
| detinere | -tinuī | -tentum | <i>detain</i> |
| distinere | -tinuī | -tentum | <i>divide, busy</i> |
| ⁵⁵ obtinere | -tinuī | -tentum | <i>maintain, hold</i> |
| retinere | -tinuī | -tentum | <i>retain</i> |
| sustinere | -tinuī | -tentatum | <i>endure</i> |

Tecto me arcuisti

Te amicum h.,
have a friend
in you
Finibus proh.,
keep out of the
country

De proelio te a.

Noceo **tibi**Placeo **tibi**Tacitus, *silent*A proposito d.,
d. from a plan

Tibi suscenseo

Passive of doc.
is *discere*.

(Ab) iniuria a.

Ad mare pert.

Regnum obtinet

SECOND CONJUGATION: ēre, eō

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------|-------------|----------------------------|---|
| carēre | caruī | caritūrus | <i>be without</i> | Dolore caret |
| dolēre | doluī | dolitūrus | <i>feel pain</i> | Oculi mihi d. |
| ⁶⁰ pārēre | pāruī | pāritūrus | <i>obey</i> | Patri pareo |
| apparere | - paruī | - paritūrus | <i>appear</i> | |
| valēre | valuī | valitūrus | <i>be strong</i> | Multum valet <i>has great influence</i> |
| calēre | caluī | — (177, n.) | be warm | Aestuarē, feel w. |
| egēre | eguī | — | <i>need</i> | Eget cibo |
| ⁶⁵ indigere | indigui | — | <i>need</i> | Indiget cibi |
| ēminēre | ēminuī | — | <i>stand out</i> | |
| flōrēre | flōruī | — | <i>bloom</i> | |
| horrēre | horruī | — | <i>shudder at</i> | Minas eius h. |
| iacēre | iacuī | — | <i>lie</i> | In lecto iacet; but urbs (po) sita est in monte |
| ⁷⁰ latēre | latuī | — | <i>be hidden</i> | |
| nitēre | nitui | — | <i>shine</i> | |
| olēre | oluī | — | <i>smell of (i.)</i> | Malitiam olet |
| patēre | patui | — | <i>stand open</i> | |
| silēre | silui | — | <i>be silent</i> | |
| ⁷⁵ studēre | studui | — | <i>take pains about</i> | Scire studeo |
| stupēre | stupui | — | <i>be astounded</i> | litteris, tibi studeo |
| timēre | timui | — | <i>fear</i> | Timeo, ne (non) <i>I fear that (not)</i> |
| vigēre | vigui | — | <i>be vigorous</i> | |
| avēre | — | — | <i>long for</i> | |
| ⁸⁰ cōnīvēre | — | — | <i>half close the eyes</i> | |
| frīgēre | — | — | <i>be cold</i> | |
| imminēre | — | — | <i>hang over</i> | Mors tibi i. |
| maerēre | — | — | <i>mourn</i> | Re, rem maereo, |
| pollēre | — | — | <i>be potent</i> | re, rem doleo |
| ⁸⁵ splendēre | — | — | <i>shine</i> | |

Perfects formed by s

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------|---------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| augēre | auxī | auctum | <i>increase (tr.)</i> | Rem augere |
| torquēre | torsī | tortum | <i>twist</i> <i>torture</i> | |
| abstergēre | tersi | - tersum | <i>wipe off</i> | |
| iubēre | iussī | iussum | <i>order</i> | Te scribere iubeo |
| ⁹⁰ permulcēre | mulsi | - mulsum | <i>soothe</i> | |
| rīdēre | rīsī | rīsum | <i>laugh (at)</i> | Te rideo |
| arridere | - risi | - risum | <i>smile at</i> | Tibi arrideo |
| irridere | - risi | - risum | <i>laugh at</i> | Te irrideo |

SECOND CONJUGATION: ēre, eō

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------|----------|------------------------------------|---|
| suādēre | suāsī | suāsum | <i>advise</i> | Suadeo tibi ut |
| ⁹⁵ persuādēre | suasī | -suāsum | { <i>convince</i> <i>induce</i> | P. tibi (a. c. i.) P. tibi, ut . . . |
| ārdēre | ārsī | ārsūrus | <i>be on fire</i> | |
| haerēre | haesī | haesūrus | <i>stick (i.)</i> | |
| manēre | mānsī | mānsūrus | <i>remain</i> | |
| algēre | alsī | — | <i>feel cold</i> | |
| ¹⁰⁰ fulgēre | fulsī | — | <i>flash</i> | |
| indulgēre | indulsī | — | <i>am indulgent</i> | Tibi indulges |
| urgēre | ursī | impulsum | <i>urge, press</i> | |
| lūcēre | lūxī | — | <i>be light, beam</i> | |
| lūgēre | lūxī | — | <i>mourn, bewail</i> | Mortem eius l. |

Perfects formed by Reduplication

| | | | | |
|------------------------|----------|-----------|---|---|
| ¹⁰⁵ mordēre | momordī | morsum | <i>bite</i> | |
| spondēre | spopondī | spōnsum | <i>promise</i> | Sponsus, a; <i>bride-</i> |
| respondēre | respondī | respōnsum | <i>answer</i> | <i>groom, bride</i> |
| tondēre | totōndī | tōnsum | <i>clip; shave</i> | Respondeo tibi |
| detondere | detondi | detonsum | <i>clipp off</i> | |
| ¹¹⁰ pendēre | pependī | — | <i>hang (intr.)</i> | A cruce pendet; |
| impendēre | — | — | { <i>overhang</i> <i>threaten (i.)</i> | ex te pendet, <i>it depends on you</i> |
| | | | | Bellum impendet |

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------|---------|--|------------------------------|
| cavēre | cāvī | cautum | { <i>beware</i> <i>take care of</i> | Id, eum cave |
| favēre | fāvī | fautum | <i>favor</i> | Fratri cave |
| fovēre | fōvī | fōtum | <i>cherish</i> | Tibi faveo |
| ¹¹⁵ movēre | mōvī | mōtum | <i>move (tr.)</i> | Commovere, per- |
| vovēre | vōvī | vōtum | <i>vow</i> | move, <i>stir (tr.)</i> |
| sedēre | sēdī | sessum | <i>sit</i> | |
| circumsedere | -sedi | -sessum | <i>invest</i> | Urbem c. |
| snpersedere | -sedi | -sessum | <i>refrain</i> | Labore s. |
| ¹²⁰ obsidere | -sedi | -sessum | <i>besiege</i> | |
| possidere | -sedi | -sessum | <i>possess</i> | |
| vidēre | vīdī | vīsum | <i>see</i> | |
| invidere | -vidi | -visum | { <i>envy</i> <i>foresee</i> | Eius virtuti i. |
| providere | -vidi | -visum | <i>provide</i> | Futura prov. Tibi provide |

Without apparent change of Stem

| | | | |
|-------------------------|--------|---------|------------------|
| ¹²⁵ prandēre | prandī | prānsum | <i>breakfast</i> |
|-------------------------|--------|---------|------------------|

See n. 199

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

Perfect formed by v

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------------|---|
| sternere | strāvī | strātum | cover over | Viam silice st. |
| prōsternere | -strāvī | -strātum | prostrate | Consternere, cover |
| cernere | — | — | discern | |
| dēcernere | dēcrēvī | dēcrētum | decree | Senatus res d. |
| ¹³⁰ spernere | sprēvī | sprētum | spurn | |
| oblinere | oblēvī | óblitum | daub over | |
| se-rere | sēvī | satum | sow, plant | |
| conserere | -sevi | -situm | sow with | Ager consitus est |
| inserere | -sevi | -situm | implant | Insitus, inborn |
| ¹⁸⁵ sinere | sīvī | situm | let, allow | Te ire sino |
| dēsinere | { dēstiti dēsī | -situm | cease (220, 1) | Timere desino |
| petere | petīvī | petitum | seek to obtain | A te peto; ut..... |
| quaerere | quaesīvī | quaesitum | { seek, look for ask | Ducem quaero |
| conquīrere | -quīsīvī | -quīsītum | go in quest of | A te, ex te quaero, quis sis |
| ¹⁴⁰ terere | trīvī | tritum | rub | Tempus contero, spend, waste t. |
| arcessere | arcessīvī | arcessitum | { summon | Iter tritum |
| accersere | accersīvī | accersitum | { send for | a beaten way; |
| capessere | capessīvī | capessitum | seize eagerly | Proverbium con- |
| laccessere | laccessīvī | laccessitum | provoke | tritum, trite pr. |
| | | | | Re l., prov. to |

Perfects formed by u

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------|-------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ¹⁴⁵ incumbere | incubūī | incubitum | lay one's self upon | In id studium in quo es, i'e |
| prōcumbere | -cubūī | -cubitum | prostrate one's sf. | Tibi ad pedes p. |
| gi-gnere | genuī | genitum | beget | |
| pōnere | posuī | positum | { place, lay set, put | Statuam in aede pono |
| anteponere | -posui | -positu | prefer | Te mihi antep. |
| ¹⁵⁰ exponere | -posui | -positum | { set on shore explain | Eos e navi exp. |
| imponere | -posui | -positum | place upon | Causam exp. |
| alere | aluī | altum | nourish | Tibi onus imp. |
| colere | coluī | cultum | { cultivate honor | Almus, genial; Alma mater |
| excolere | -coluī | -cultum.... | perfect | Agrum, virtutem c. |
| ¹⁵⁵ incolere | -coluī | — | inhabit | Deum, homines c. |
| | | | | Incultus, untilled |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------------|---|
| cōnsulere | cōnsulūi | cōnsultum | <i>consult</i> | Tibi consulo. take care of you |
| cōnserere | consērūi | cōnser̄tum | <i>join, fit</i> | Manus conserere join battle |
| dēserere | -serūi | -sertum | <i>desert</i> | |
| disserere | -serūi | disputātum | <i>discourse</i> | Disertus, skilful in speaking, (less than eloquens) |
| ¹⁶⁰ īnserere | -serūi | -sertum | <i>insert, put into</i> | |
| texere | texūi | textum | <i>weave</i> | |
| molere | molui | molitum | <i>grind</i> | |
| vomere | vomui | vomitum | <i>throw up</i> | |
| fremere | fremui | — | <i>growl</i> | |
| ²⁶⁵ gemere | gemui | — | <i>groan, sigh</i> | |
| strepere | strepui | — | <i>rumble</i> | |
| tremere | tremui | — | <i>tremble</i> | |

Perfects formed by s

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------|---------------|--|--|
| coquere | co xī | coctum | <i>cook</i> | |
| concoquere | -coxī | -coctum | <i>digest</i> | |
| ¹⁷⁰ dicere | dixī | dictum | <i>say (203)</i> | Dic ei, quis sis |
| indīcere | -dixī | -dictum | <i>announce</i> | Bellum indicere, declare war; |
| indicāre | -dicāvī | -dicātum | <i>point out</i> | diem indicere, appoint a day |
| praedicere | -dixī | -dictum | <i>fortell</i> | |
| praedicāre | -dicāvī | -dicātum | <i>proclaim</i> | |
| ¹⁷⁵ dūcere | dūxī | ductum | <i>lead (203)</i> | Inducere, lead in, move to |
| condūcere | -dūxī | -ductum | <i>hire, rent</i> | Producere, lead before |
| ēdūcere | -dūxī | -ductum | <i>lead forth</i> | |
| ēducāre | -ducāvī | -ducātum | <i>bring up</i> | Se subducere, <i>withdraw</i> |
| affligere | afflīxī | afflictum | { <i>strike down</i> | |
| ¹⁸⁰ prōflīgāre | -flīgāvī | -flīgātum | { <i>to the ground</i> | |
| cōnfligere | -flīxī | -flīctum | <i>be in combat</i> | Cum hoste c. |
| regere | rēxī | rēctum | <i>guide, rule</i> | Rectus, <i>straight</i> |
| corrigere | corrēxī | -rēctum | <i>improve</i> | |
| dērigere | dērēxī | -rēctum | { <i>set straight</i> <i>direct</i> | Aciem d., draw up <i>in battle array</i> |
| ¹⁸⁵ porrigere | porrēxī | -rēctum | <i>hold forth, offer</i> | Tibi dexteram p. |
| pergere | perrēxī | -rēctum | <i>proceed (to go)</i> | Eadem via perge |
| surgere | surrēxī | -rēctum | <i>rise, stand up</i> | De lecto s. |
| tegere | tēxī | tēctum | <i>cover</i> | Protegere, <i>protect</i> |
| trahere | trāxī | -trāctum | <i>draw, haul</i> | |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

| | | | | | |
|-----|------------|-------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| 190 | vehere | vexī | vectum | carry | |
| | vehī | vectus | sum | be carried | Equo vehi, ride |
| | cingere | cīnxī | cīnctum | gird | |
| | tingere | tīnxī | tīnctum | dye, tinge | |
| | iungere | iūnxī | iūnctum | join, connect | Me vobis iungo, I join you |
| 195 | coniungere | -iūnxī | -iūnctum | join together | |
| | disiungere | -iūnxi | -iūnctum | disjoin, part | |
| | ingere | fīnxī | fictum | form, mould | Fictus, fictitious: ficti di. |
| | pingere | pīnxī | pictum | paint | |
| | stringere | strīnxī | strictum | {graze }strip off | Gladium destr., draw the sword |
| 200 | figere | fīxī | fīxum | fix, fasten | In terra f. |
| | dēmergere, | -mersī | -mersum | dip, sink (tr.) | Me d., I dive |
| | dēmergor | dēmersus | sum | sink (intr.) | |
| | ēmergō | ēmersi | -mersum | emerge (usu. i.) | |
| | spargere | sparsi | sparsum | strew, throw about | Dispergere milites, scatter the soldiers |
| 205 | aspergere | -spersi | -spersum | besprinkle | |
| | flectere | flexī | flexum | bend (trans.) | Deflectere, turn aside (tr. & i.) |
| | cōnectere | (-nexuī) | -nexum | tie together | |
| | nūbere | nūpsi | nūptum | marry | Nupta, married; nubo, veil myself for..... |
| | | fīlia alicuī | nūbit | | |
| | | fīlius aliquam virginem | dūcit | | |
| | scribere | scripsi | scriptum | write | Ad te scribo Proscr., outlaw |
| 210 | cōscribere | -scripsi | -scriptum | levy, enroll | |
| | carpere | carpsi | carptum | pluck; carp at | |
| | dēcerpere | -cerpsi | -cerptum | pluck off | |
| | scalpere | scalpsi | scalptum | engrave | (of surface work) |
| | īnsculpere | -sculpsi | -sculptum | chisel, carve in | (of deeper work) |
| 215 | irrēpere | irrēpsi | — | creep in | |
| | serpere | serpsi | — | creep | |
| | contemnere | -tempti | -temptum | value little | |
| | gerere | gessi | gestum | carry on | Bellum gerere wage war |
| | digerere | -gessi | -gestum | arrange | Res gestae, ex- ploits |
| 220 | combūrere | combussi | combustum | burn up (tr.) | Deflagrare, burn down (intr.) |
| | ambūrere | ambussi | ambustum | scorch | |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ̄o

| | | | | |
|----------------|---------|----------|-----------------------|--|
| premere | pressī | pressum | press | |
| exprimere | -pressī | -pressum | {press out express | |
| opprimere | -pressī | -pressum | bear down | |
| 225 cēdere | cessī | cessum | give place to | Tibi cedo |
| accēdere | -cessī | -cessum | approach | Ad te accedo |
| claudere | clausī | clausum | close | Concludere, en- close, end, infer |
| inclūdere | -clūsī | -clūsū | shut up | |
| interclūdere | -clūsī | -clūsū | shut off, cut off | Tibi commeata i., cut off supplies |
| 230 dīvidere | dīvīsī | dīvīsum | separate, divide | |
| laedere | laesī | laesum | trouble; offend | Fidem laedere, break one's word |
| allīdere | -līsī | -līsū | dash against | |
| lūdere | lūsī | lūsū | play | Illudo tibi = eludo te, jeer at you |
| ēlūdere | -lūsī | -lūsū | elude, mock | |
| 235 plaudere | plausī | plausum | applaud | Tibi plaudo |
| explōdere | -plōsī | -plōsum | hoot off | Te explodo |
| rādere | rāsī | rāsū | scrape, shave | |
| rōdere | rōsī | rōsum | gnaw | |
| trūdere | trūsī | trūsū | thrust, shove | |
| 240 invadere | -vāsī | -vāsū | invade | In bona tua, in te |
| ēvādere | -vāsī | -vāsū | escape, become | Is non potest |
| vadere | — | — | go (rapidly) | orator evadere |
| mittere | mīsī | missum | send | De-, let down |
| āmittere | -mīsī | -missum | lose (by accident) | |
| 245 committere | -mīsī | -missum | intrust | Proelium c. engage in battle |
| dīmittere | -mīsī | -missum | dismiss | |
| metere | secūī | messum | mow, reap | |
| dēmetere | dēsecūī | dēmessum | cut off, reap | |

Perfects formed by Reduplication

| | | | | |
|--------------|---------|-------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| cadere | cēcidi | cāsūrus | fall (intr.) | Animo cadere, lose courage |
| 250 incidere | incidī | (incāsūrus) | fall into | |
| occidere | ōccidi | occāsūrus | go down, die | |
| recidere | rēcidi | recāsūrus | fall back | Suspicio in te r. |
| concidere | concidi | — | fall down | Miles, turris c. |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

| | | | | |
|--|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| caedere | cecīdī | caesum | <i>hew, fell</i> (tr.) | Abscidere, <i>cut off</i> Praecidere, <i>c. off</i> |
| ²⁵⁵ incidere | incīdī | incisum | <i>cut into</i> | |
| occidere | occīdī | occisum | <i>kill, slay</i> | Con-, <i>c. to pieces</i> |
| currere | cucurrī | cursum | <i>run</i> (intr.) | |
| accurrere | { accurrī accucurri | accursum | <i>run to a place</i> | Ad te accurro |
| recurrere | recurrī | recursum | <i>run back</i> | |
| ²⁶⁰ succurrere | succurri | succursum | <i>hasten to aid</i> | Tibi succurro |
| <i>Note: The other cpds. are conjug. like accurrere.</i> | | | | |
| fallere | fefellī | dēceptum | <i>deceive</i> | Falsus, <i>false</i> |
| refellere | refellī | refūtātum | <i>disprove, rebut</i> | |
| parcere | pepercī | temperātum | <i>spare</i> | Tibi parco, t. |
| pellere | pepulī | pulum | <i>drive out, push</i> | (Ex) patria p. |
| ²⁶⁵ appellere | appulī | appulsum | <i>drive toward</i> | Navem ad ripam |
| appellare | appellavi | appellatum | <i>address, accost</i> | (With a request) |
| repellere | reppulī | repulsum | <i>drive back</i> | Vim vi repellere |
| pendere | pependī | pēsum | <i>weigh, pay</i> | |
| impendere | impendī | impēsum | <i>expend</i> | Pecuniam in res vanas impendere |
| ²⁷⁰ suspendere | -pendī | -pēsum | <i>hang up</i> (tr.) | |
| canere | cecīnī | cantātum | <i>sing, sound</i> (tr.) | Canit cervus; canit homo voce, fidibus |
| concinere | -cinuī | — | <i>agree together</i> | |
| pungere | pūpugī | pūnctum | <i>sting, puncture</i> | Pungit me, quod scribis |
| compungere | -pūnxī | -pūnctum | <i>sting severely</i> | |
| ²⁷⁵ tangere | tetigī | tāctum | <i>touch</i> | Rhenum a., b. on |
| attingere | attigī | (tāctum) | <i>border on, reach</i> | Manus ad te t. |
| tendere | tetendī | tentum | <i>stretch</i> (tr.) | Animum a. ad - a. |
| attendere | attendī | attentum | <i>attend to</i> | Stuporem eius attende, mark his stupidity |
| contendere | -tendī | -tentum | <i>exert (myself)</i> | |
| ²⁸⁰ extendere | -tendī | { extentum extēsum | <i>extend</i> (tr.) | |
| ostendere | -tendī | ostentātum | <i>show</i> | |
| abdere | abdidī | abditum | <i>put away, hide</i> | See dare, pg. 85. |
| crēdere | crēdidī | crēditum | <i>believe</i> | Mihi crede |
| dēdere | -didī | -ditum | <i>give up</i> | Hosti me d., sur- render |
| ²⁸⁵ ēdere | -didī | -ditum | <i>give out</i> | Addere, <i>add</i> |
| trādere | -didī | -ditum | <i>transmit</i> | Condere, <i>found</i> |
| reddere | reddidi | redditum | <i>give back</i> | Prodere, <i>betray</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

Present with Reduplication

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|------------|--------------|---|-------------------------------|
| bi- bere | bibī | pōtum | <i>drink</i> | |
| cōn-si- stere , | cōnstitī — | | <i>place one's self,</i> <i>halt (intr.)</i> | In loco c. Hic consistimus |
| ²⁹⁰ dēsistere | -stitī | — | <i>leave off</i> | Caede desiste |
| resistere | -stitī | — | <i>resist</i> | Vix r. dolori |
| circumsistere | -stetī | —(p. 85, 12) | <i>surround</i> | Plures paucos c. |

Reduplication lost

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|-----------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| percellere | perculī | perculsum | <i>knock down</i> | |
| antecellere | } praestitī — | | <i>excel</i> | Tibi antecello |
| ²⁹⁵ excellere | | | | Vobis (plur.!) e. |
| contundere | cōntudī | contūsum | <i>crush, bruise</i> | |
| obtundere | óbtudī | obtūsum | <i>blunt the mind)</i> | Multa mentem o. |
| retundere | réttudī | retūsum | <i>blunt (the sword)</i> | |
| findere | fidī | fissum | <i>split</i> | |
| ³⁰⁰ diffindere | díffidī | diffissum | <i>cleave asunder</i> | See n. 198, a. |
| scindere | scidī | scissum | <i>tear assunder</i> | |
| rescindere | réscidī | rescissum | <i>tear down, annul</i> | Pontem, acta r. |

Perfect formed by lengthening of Vowel

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| emere | ē mī | ē mptum | <i>buy</i> | |
| coēmere | -ēmī | -ē mptum | <i>buy up</i> | |
| ³⁰⁵ adimere | -ēmī | -ē mptum | <i>take away</i> | Tibi pecuniam a. |
| dīrimere | dīrēmī | dīrē mptum | <i>separate, end</i> | Nox proelium d. |
| cōmere | cōmpsi | cō mptum | <i>adorn, dress</i> | |
| dēmere | dēmpsi | dē mptum | <i>take away from</i> | Tibi molestiam d. |
| prōmere | prōmpsi | prō mptum | <i>take out</i> | Interimere, do away with |
| ³¹⁰ sūmere | sūmpsi | sū mptum | <i>take (for myself)</i> | |
| legere | lēgī | lēctum | <i>read</i> | Relegere, r. again |
| (lēgāre | lēgāvī | lēgātum | <i>send</i> | |
| perlegere | -lēgī | -lēctum | <i>read through</i> | |
| colligere | collēgī | collēctum | <i>collect, gather</i> | Eligere = seligere = deligere |
| ³¹⁵ dēligere | dēlēgī | dēlēctum | <i>choose</i> | |
| diligere | dīlēxī | dīlēctum | <i>esteem highly</i> | Nunc amo, ante diligebam |
| intelligere | intellēxī | intellēctum | <i>see into</i> | |
| neglegere | neglēxī | neglēctum | <i>neglect, slight</i> | |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------|----------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| agere | ēgī | āctum | <i>drive, act, do</i> | Circumagere, |
| ³²⁰ peragere | -egī | -āctum | <i>carry thro'</i> | <i>drive around</i> |
| abigere | -ēgī | -āctum | <i>drive away</i> | Adigere, <i>drive to</i> |
| subigere | -ēgī | -āctum | <i>subjugate</i> | |
| ambigere | — | — | <i>dispute about</i> | |
| cōgere | coēgī | coāctum | <i>gather, force</i> | Te emere coegit |
| ³²⁵ dēgere | ēgī | āctum | <i>spend</i> | Vitam degere |
| frangere | frēgī | frāctum | <i>break to pieces</i> | Portas refringere, |
| cōnfringere | -frēgī | -fractum | <i>dash to pieces</i> | <i>break open</i> |
| relinquere | reliquī | relictum | <i>leave behind</i> | de - l., <i>tr'gress</i> |
| vincere | vīcī | victum | <i>conquer</i> | |
| ³³⁰ convincere | -vīcī | -victum | <i>convict</i> | Te furti convinco |
| rumpere | rūpī | ruptum | <i>burst, rend</i> | Vincula, foedus r. |
| corrumpere | -rūpī | -ruptum | <i>bribe, spoil</i> | Pro--r., b. <i>forth</i> |
| fundere | fūdī | fūsum | <i>pour, rout</i> | Adversarios f. |

Perfects without apparent change of Stem

| | | | | |
|---|-----------|-----------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| accendere | accendī | accēsum | <i>kindle (above)</i> | |
| ³³⁵ incendere | incendī | incēsum | <i>k. (on every side of)</i> | |
| succendere | succendō | succēsum | <i>k. (underneath)</i> | |
| scandere | — | — | <i>mount, climb</i> | Alpes tran—sc. |
| āscendere | ascendī | āscēsum | <i>mount, climb</i> | Murum a—sc. |
| dēscendere | dēscendī | dēscēsum | <i>descend (dē)</i> | Navem con—sc. |
| ³⁴⁰ excūdere | excūdī | excūsum | <i>hammer out</i> | |
| dēfendere | dēfendī | dēfēsum | <i>{ ward off defend</i> | Bellum def. |
| prehendere | prehendī | prehēsum | <i>lay hold of</i> | Castra ab h. d. |
| dēprehendere | -prehendī | -prehēsum | <i>surprise</i> | comprehendere, |
| cōnsidere | cōnsēdī | — | <i>sit down</i> | <i>seize, grasp</i> |
| ³⁴⁵ possidere | possēdī | possessum | <i>occupy</i> | Hic in umbra c. |
| possidēre | possēdī | possessum | <i>possess</i> | |
| <i>Note: -sēdī and -sessum are forms of sedēre.</i> | | | | |
| pandere | pandī | passum | <i>spread out</i> | Mandere, <i>chew</i> |
| vertere | vertī | versum | <i>turn</i> | Terga, v., <i>flee</i> |
| animadvertere | -vertī | -versum | <i>{ observe punish</i> | Quae fiant, a'e In eum a'o |
| ³⁵⁰ ēvertere | -vertī | -versum | <i>overturn, destroy</i> | Avertere, t, <i>away</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

| | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| vellere | vellī | vulsum | <i>pluck</i> | |
| vīsere | vīsī | — | <i>view; visit</i> | invisere, <i>visit</i> |
| angere | sollicitāvī | sollicitā- | <i>cause</i> | |
| | | tum | <i>distress</i> | Angi, <i>feel d.</i> |
| furere | īnsānīvī | — | <i>be furious</i> | |
| 355 vergere | — | — | <i>be situated</i> | Ad septent. v. |

Verbs in uō (vō)

Perfect without any apparent change of Stem

| | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|--|-----------------------|--|
| acuere | acuī | { acūtus (adj.) sharp, sharpen pointed | | Acutus homo Serram, mentem a. Acute responde |
| arguere | arguī | accūsātum | <i>charge with</i> | Te sceleris arguo |
| | argūtus (adj.), | expressive; sagacious | | Capitis, te accuso |
| coarguere | -arguī | convictum | <i>convict, prove</i> | Te avaritiae c. |
| redarguere | -arguī | refūtātum | <i>refute</i> | Te, orationem r. |
| 360 imbuere | -imbuī | imbūtum | <i>moisten</i> | |
| exuere | exuī | exūtum | <i>pull off</i> | Humanitatem e. |
| induere | induī | indūtum | <i>put on</i> | Annulum mihi i. |
| minuere | minuī | minūtum | <i>diminish (tr.)</i> | |
| statuere | statuī | statūtum | <i>set up, decide</i> | Statuam ei st. |
| 365 cōstituere | -stituī | -stitūtum | <i>determine</i> | Idem facere c. |
| tribuere | tribuī | tribūtum | <i>impart, grant</i> | |
| luere | luī | ablūtum | <i>wash off</i> | Diluere, (like abl.) <i>wash away</i> |
| luere | luī | expiātum | <i>expiate</i> | |
| abluere | abluī | ablūtum | <i>wash off</i> | Crimen diluo |
| 370 abnuere | abnuī | recūsātum | <i>refuse</i> | Nihil tibi abnuo |
| annuere | annuī | concessum | <i>nod, assent to</i> | Toto capite id a. |
| respuere | respuī | repudiātum | <i>reject, spurn</i> | Spuere, -i, <i>spit</i> |
| ruere | ruī | ruitūrus | <i>fall, rush</i> | Sciens in mala r. |
| dīruere | dīruī | dīrutum | <i>demolish</i> | Corr., i, (intr.) <i>fall down</i> |
| 375 obruere | obruī | obrutum | <i>overwhelm</i> | |
| congruere | congruī | — | <i>agree</i> | Tecum congruo |
| metuere | metuī | — | <i>fear</i> | M., ne, <i>fear that.</i> |
| solvere | solvi | solūtum | <i>loose, pay</i> | Navem, <i>set sail</i> |
| persolvere | -solvi | -solūtum | <i>pay</i> | Promissa, vota p. |
| volvere | volvī | volūtum | <i>roll</i> | |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

Perfects formed by s

| | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------|----------------------------|--------------------|--|
| distinguere | -stīnxī | -stīnctum | <i>distinguish</i> | Vera a falsis d. |
| extinguere | -stīnxī | -stīnctum | <i>put out</i> | |
| unguere } ungere } | ūnxī | ūnctum | <i>anoint</i> | |
| ³⁸⁵ fluere } St. flug } | fluxī | {fluxus, adj. {fleeting | <i>flow</i> | Divitiis affluens <i>overfl. with riches</i> |
| struere } St. strug } | strūxī | strūctum | <i>build</i> | Aciem instruere, <i>place in battle ar- ray</i> |
| vīvere } St. vig } | vīxī | vīctūrus | <i>live</i> | Vitam vivere <i>Cum virtute v.</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, iō (conj. pg. 78)

Perfects formed by v or u

| | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------------------------|
| cupere | cupiō | cupīvī | cupītum | <i>desire, long for</i> |
| sapere | sapiō | sapīvī | — | <i>be wise, savor of</i> |
| ³⁹⁰ rapere | rapīō | rapuī | raptum | <i>rob; snatch</i> |
| diripere | -ripiō | -ripuī | -reptum | <i>plunder</i> |

Perfect formed by s

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------|-----------------------|
| cōnspicere | -spiciō | -spexī | -spectum | <i>get sight of</i> |
| sūspicere | -spicio | -spexī | -spectum | <i>look up to</i> |
| sūspicārī | sūspiciātus | sum | | <i>suspect</i> |
| ³⁹⁵ ēlicere | -liciō | ēlicuī | -licitum | <i>lure forth</i> |
| illicere | -liciō | illēxī | illectum | {seduce |
| pellicere | -liciō | pellēxī | pellectum | {inveigle |
| allicere | -liciō | allēxī | — | <i>allure</i> |
| concutere | -cutiō | -cussī | -cussum | <i>shake</i> |
| ⁴⁰⁰ percutere | -cutiō | -cussī | -cussum | <i>strike, pierce</i> |

Perfects formed by Reduplication

| | | | | |
|--------|-------------------|--------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| parere | pariō | peperi | {partum {paritūrus | <i>bring forth</i> |
| | partus, acquired; | | parātus, ready | |

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

| | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------|-------|---------|--------------------|
| capere | capiō | cēpī | captum | <i>take, seize</i> |
| accipere | -cipiō | -cēpī | -ceptum | <i>get</i> |
| dēcipere | -cipiō | -cēpī | -ceptum | <i>cheat</i> |
| ⁴⁰⁵ suscipere | -cipiō | -cēpī | -ceptum | <i>take up</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION: *ere, iō* (Conj. pg. 78)

| | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| facere (203) | <i>faciō</i> | <i>fēcī</i> | <i>factum</i> | <i>make, do</i> |
| Passive, <i>fierī</i> etc., 237. | | | | |
| <i>assuēfacere</i> | - <i>faciō</i> | - <i>fēcī</i> | - <i>factum</i> | <i>accustom</i> |
| <i>patefacere</i> | - <i>faciō</i> | - <i>fēcī</i> | - <i>factum</i> | <i>open</i> |
| <i>vacuēfacere</i> | - <i>faciō</i> | - <i>fēcī</i> | - <i>factum</i> | <i>empty</i> |

The **Pass.** of -*faciō* is -*fīō*; **Accent:** -*fácis* (8, c.)

| | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 410 <i>cōnficere</i> | - <i>ficiō</i> | - <i>fēcī</i> | - <i>fectum</i> | <i>accomplish</i> |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|

The **Pass.** of -*ficiō* is -*ficior*; **Accent:** *cōnficis*

| | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| iacere | <i>iaciō</i> | <i>iēcī</i> | <i>iactum</i> | <i>throw</i> |
| <i>abicere</i> | - <i>iciō</i> (4, 11) | - <i>iēcī</i> | - <i>iectum</i> | <i>throw away</i> |
| <i>prōicere</i> | - <i>iciō</i> | - <i>iēcī</i> | - <i>iectum</i> | <i>fling away</i> |
| fodere | <i>fodiō</i> | <i>fōdī</i> | fossum | <i>dig</i> |
| 415 <i>cōnfodere</i> | - <i>fodiō</i> | - <i>fōdī</i> | - <i>fossum</i> | <i>stab</i> |
| fugere | <i>fugiō</i> | <i>fūgī</i> | (<i>fugitūrus</i>) | <i>flee</i> |
| <i>aufugere</i> | - <i>fugiō</i> | - <i>fūgī</i> | | <i>flee from</i> |
| <i>cōnfugere</i> | - <i>fugiō</i> | - <i>fūgī</i> | | <i>flee to</i> |

VERBA INCOHATIVA: INCHOATIVES

Inchoatives are **derivatives** (253), formed from verbs, adjectives and substantives; they are called inchoatives (*incohāre, begin*) because they usually denote the beginning of an action or a condition.

-*scō* = **begin to**

1. Inchoatives whose Radical Word is unknown

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| discere | <i>didicī</i> | — | <i>learn</i> |
| 420 <i>dēdiscere</i> | <i>dēdidicī</i> | — | <i>unlearn, forget</i> |
| poscere | poposcī | <i>postulātum</i> | <i>demand</i> |
| <i>dēposcere</i> | <i>dēpoposcī</i> | — | <i>demand earnestly</i> |
| <i>reposcere</i> | <i>repetīvī</i> | <i>repetītum</i> | <i>demand back</i> |
| <i>pāscere</i> | <i>pāvī</i> | <i>pāstum</i> | <i>pasture</i> (tr.) |
| 425 <i>pāscī</i> | <i>pāstus sum</i> | | <i>pasture</i> (intr.) |
| <i>crēscere</i> | <i>crēvī</i> | — | <i>grow</i> |
| <i>nōscere</i> | <i>nōvī</i> | — | <i>come to know</i> |
| | <i>nōvī, know</i> | <i>nōtus</i> (adj.) | <i>known</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION: ere, ō

| | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| cognōscere | cognōvī | cognitum | <i>get to know</i> |
| | cognōvī | <i>know well</i> | |
| agnōscere | agnōvī | agnitum | <i>acknowledge</i> |
| ⁴³⁰ ignōscere | ignōvī | ignōtum | <i>forgive (tibi)</i> |
| | ignōtus (adj.), | <i>unknown</i> | |
| quiēscere | quiēvī | quiētūrus | <i>repose</i> |
| | quiētus (adj.), | <i>quiet</i> | |
| cōnsuēscere | consuēvī | — | <i>accustom oneself</i> |
| | cōnsuēvī, | <i>am accustomed;</i> | <i>assuētus (a.) accustomed</i> |
| | labōre | assuētus, | <i>accustomed to labor</i> |
| | assuēvī | - soleō; | <i>assuēveram = solēbam</i> |

2. INCOHATIVA VERBALIA (Root-word a Verb)

Perfect of inchoative = Perfect of root-verb.

Only sciscere has a pf. part.

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| inveterāre | inveterāscere | inveterāvī | <i>become fixed</i> |
| <i>render old</i> | inveterātus (adj.), | <i>rooted</i> | |
| (olēre, grow) | adolēscere | adolēvī | <i>grow up</i> |
| | adūltus (adj.), | <i>grown up</i> | |
| ⁴³⁵ | obsolēscere | obsolēvī | <i>fall into disuse</i> |
| | obsolētus (adj.) | <i>worn out</i> | |
| flōrēre | efflōrēscere | efflōruī | <i>begin to flourish</i> |
| horrēre | prehorrēscere | prehorruī | <i>begin to shudder</i> |
| senēre | cōnsenēscere | cōnsenuī | <i>grow old, weak</i> |
| <i>be old</i> | amicus c., vīrēs, lēges c. | | |
| tacēre | conticēscere | conticuī | <i>cease speaking</i> |
| ⁴⁴⁰ timēre | pertimēscere | pertimuī | <i>begin to dread</i> |
| valēre | convalēscere | convaluī | <i>regain health</i> |
| ardēre | exardēscere | exarsī | <i>become inflamed</i> |
| alere | coalēscere | coaluī | <i>grow together</i> |
| vīvere | revivīscere | revīxī revīctūrus | <i>revive</i> |
| ⁴⁴⁵ cupere | concupīscere | concupīvī | <i>covet</i> |
| dormīre | obdormīscere | obdormīvī | <i>fall asleep</i> |
| scīre | scīscere | scīvī scītum (67) | <i>decree</i> |
| | mihi mortem cōnscīscō, | <i>commit suicide</i> | |
| | ā rēge | dēscīscō, | <i>fall away from...</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION : ere, ō

3. INCOHATIVA NOMINALIA (Root-word a Noun)

| | | | |
|------------------------|------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|
| crēber | percrēbrēscere | percrēbruī | <i>gain ground</i> |
| dūrus | obdūrēscere (ad) | obdūruī | <i>become insensible</i> |
| ⁴⁵⁰ mātūrus | mātūrēscere | mātūruī | <i>grow ripe</i> |
| mūtus | obmūtēscere | obmūtui | <i>grow dumb</i> |
| vānus | ēvānēscere | ēvānuī | <i>vanish</i> [some] |
| gravis | ingravēscere | — | <i>become burden-</i> |
| puer | repuerāscere | — | <i>become a boy</i> <i>again</i> |

209. FOURTH CONJUGATION: ĩre, iō

Perfects formed by v

Like audire:

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|---------|------------------------|
| condire | <i>season, embalm</i> | lēnire | <i>soften, soothe</i> |
| custōdire | <i>watch over</i> | mūnire | <i>fortify</i> |
| ēducāre | <i>educate</i> | servire | <i>serve (Tibi s.)</i> |

With irregularities:

| | | | |
|----------------------------|--------|---------|--------------------|
| ⁴⁵⁵ scire (204) | scīvī | scītum | <i>know</i> |
| nēscire | -scīvī | -scītum | <i>not to know</i> |

Utrum sciens fecit
an inciens?

Inst. of pres. part. use : ignōrāns, ĩnciēns

| | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|-------------|
| sepelire | sepelīvī | sepultum | <i>bury</i> |
|----------|----------|----------|-------------|

Perfects formed by u

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------|---------|------------------|
| aperire | aperuī | apertum | <i>open</i> |
| operire | operuī | opertum | <i>cover</i> |
| ⁴⁶⁰ salire | saluī | — | <i>leap, hop</i> |
| dēsilire | dēsiluī | — | <i>leap down</i> |

Ex equo, ad pedes

Perfects formed by s

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------|----------|-----------------------|
| refercire | refersī | refertum | <i>stuff, fill up</i> |
| fulcire | fulsī | fultum | <i>prop up</i> |
| saepire | saepsī | saeptum | <i>hedge in</i> |
| ⁴⁶⁵ sancire | sānxi | sānctum | <i>ratify</i> |
| sarcire | sarsī | sartum | <i>repair, mend</i> |
| vincire | vinxī | vinctum | <i>bind, fetter</i> |
| haurire | hausī | haustum | <i>draw</i> |

Refertus, full:
domus referta
rebus omnibus,
civium or civibus
Sanctus, holy,

E fonte h.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: īre, iō

| | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|
| sentīre | sēnsī | sēnsūm | <i>feel, deem</i> |
| 470 consentire | - sensi | - sensum | <i>agree (544)</i> |
| dissentire | - sensi | - sensum | <i>differ</i> |

Unum atque
idem s.

Tibi, tecum c.

A te, tecum d.

Perfects formed by Reduplication

| | | | |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| reperīre | repperī | repertum | <i>find out</i> |
| comperīre | comperī | compertum | <i>learn</i> |

Quis fecerit, r.

Certo de eo c.

Perfects formed by Lengthening of Vowel

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| venīre | vēnī | ventum | <i>come</i> |
| 475 advenire | - veni | - ventum | <i>arrive</i> |
| convenire | - veni | - ventum | <i>come together</i> |
| invenire | - veni | - ventum | <i>find</i> |
| pervenire | - veni | - ventum | <i>come to</i> |
| subvenire | - veni | - ventum | <i>come to assist</i> |

Ad te v.

Romam, at R.

In unum locum

Quo intendit, p.

Tibi in hac re s.

Without Perfect and Participle-Stem

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|--|
| 480 ferīre | ſicī | ictum | <i>strike, hit</i> |
| | percussī | percussum | |
| amicīre | — | amictus | <i>wrap about</i> |
| ēsurīre | — | — | <i>{ desire to eat { be hungry</i> |

Foedus ferire

Securi eum f

Toga amictus

Desiderativa in
urio have pres. st.
only.

210. Deponents of the First Conjugation: ārī, or

(These are all regular and follow hortārī.)

| | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|---|
| arbitrārī | arbitrātus sum | <i>believe, deem</i> |
| | Part. arbitrātus , | <i>supposing</i> |
| cūctārī | cūctātus sum | <i>hesitate</i> |
| 485 glōriārī | glōriātus sum | <i>glory in</i> |
| grātulārī | grātulātus sum | <i>congratulate</i> |
| minārī | minātus sum | <i>threaten</i> |
| minitārī | minitātus sum | |
| morārī | morātus sum | <i>{ retard (tr.) { tarry (intr.)</i> |
| 490 opitulārī | opitulātus sum | <i>bring help to</i> |
| precārī | precātus sum | <i>ask, beg</i> |
| versārī | versātus sum | <i>{ dwell, be; { be engaged in</i> |

Accedere c.

Victoria g.

Tibi de hac re g.

Ei crucem m.

Si quid te moratur

Athenis morari

Tibi o.

Deum p., ut.

In foro v.

In re diff. v.

211. Deponents of the Second Conjugation = ērī, eor

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| licērī | licitus sum | <i>bid on</i> | Hortos l. |
| pollicērī | pollicitus sum | <i>promise</i> | Hoc tibi p. |
| ⁴⁹⁵ miserērī | miseritus sum | <i>pity</i> | Vestri m'eor |
| miserārī | miserātus sum | <i>deplore</i> | Vos miseror |
| tuērī | tutātus sum | <i>guard, look to</i> | Tutus (a.) safe |
| intuērī | āspexī | <i>look at</i> | |
| verērī | veritus sum | <i>fear, revere</i> | V., ne; I f. that |
| ⁵⁰⁰ faterī | fassus sum } | <i>confess</i> | Confessa res. |
| cōnfītērī | cōnfessus sum } | | (See n. 197) |
| medērī (intr.) | sānāvī (trans.) | <i>heal</i> | M. tibi; s. te |
| (rērī [no pres. part.] | ratus sum | <i>deem, believe</i>) | Ratus, <i>deeming</i> , is rare |

212. Deponents of the Third Conjugation : ī, or

| | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| fruī | fūsus sum { fruitūrs | <i>enjoy</i> | Pace f. |
| ²⁰⁵ perfruī | perfrūctus sum | <i>enjoy fully</i> | Laetitia p. |
| fungī | fūctus sum | <i>perform</i> | Munere f., perform a duty |
| lābī | lāpsus sum | <i>glide, fall</i> | Inter nos l'mur |
| loquī | locūtus sum | <i>speak, talk</i> | Per litteras c. |
| colloquī | collocūtus sum | <i>converse</i> | Scuto, spe n. |
| ⁵¹⁰ nītī | { nīxus sum { (nīsus sum) | { <i>lean, rest on</i> { <i>strive</i> | N', ut, <i>strive to</i> |
| amplectī | amplexus sum | <i>embrace</i> | |
| querī | questus sum | <i>complain</i> | De te, multa qu. |
| sequī | secūtus sum | <i>follow</i> | Te sequor |
| assequī | assecūtus sum | { <i>obtain by</i> { <i>exertion</i> | Tibi obsequor |
| ⁵¹⁵ cōsequī | cōnsecūtus sum | | <i>comply w. you</i> |
| ūtī | ūsus sum | <i>use</i> | Hac re u. ad... |
| abūtī | abūsus sum | <i>use up, misuse</i> | Potestate... |

Present in ior:

| | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| ággredi | aggressus sum | <i>attack</i> | Gradi, <i>step</i> |
| congrēdi | congressus sum | <i>meet with, fight</i> | Cum hostibus, |
| ⁵²⁰ morī | mortuus sum | <i>die</i> | |
| Part. moritūrus | | | |
| patī | passus sum | <i>suffer</i> | Eos ire p. |
| pérpetī | perpessus sum | <i>suffer patiently</i> | |

Inchoatives in *scor*:

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| adipīscī | adeptus sum | <i>attain by effort</i> | Studiis id a. |
| nancīscī | nānctus or nactus sum | <i>get by accident</i> | Occasionem n. |
| 525 expergīscī | experrēctus sum | <i>awake (intr.)</i> | |
| īrāscī | { īrātus (adj.) fui { sūscēnsuī | <i>be angry</i> | Tibi i. or s. |
| oblīvīscī | oblītus sum | <i>forget</i> | Tui, rei or rem o. { Tui, rei remin. { De te, rem rec. |
| reminīscī | recordātus sum | <i>remember</i> | No part. in urus |
| nāscī | nātus sum | <i>be born</i> | Ab urbe, ex Asia |
| 530 proficīscī | profectus sum | <i>set out</i> | Inimicum, amicum |
| ulcīscī | ultus sum | <i>avenge</i> | Lacte; caseo v. |
| vēscī | vixī or altus sum | <i>subsist on</i> | |

213. Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation: *īrī*, *ior*

| | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| blandīrī | blandītus sum | <i>flatter</i> | Tibi blandior |
| adulārī | adulātus sum | <i>flatter</i> | Te adulator |
| 535 largīrī | largītus sum | <i>bestow</i> | Tibi hoc largior |
| mentīrī | mentītus sum | <i>lie, deceive</i> | In eum hoc m'ris |
| mōlīrī | mōlītus sum | { <i>set in motion</i> { <i>set about</i> | Ancoras m. |
| partīrī | partītus sum | <i>share, divide</i> | Maiora m. |
| 540 impertīre | -īvī -ītum | <i>impart</i> | Dispartire, <i>distribute</i> |
| potīrī | potītus sum | <i>become master of</i> | Tota classe, rerum |
| sortīrī | sortītus sum | <i>get by lot</i> | Also: <i>draw lots</i> |

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| assentīrī | assēnsus sum | <i>give assent to</i> | Omnia tibi a. |
| 545 experīrī | expertus sum | { <i>try, test</i> { <i>experience</i> | Vim veneni exp. Omnia experiri |
| opperīrī | oppertus sum | <i>await, wait</i> | Ibi, tempora sua |
| mētīrī | mēnsus sum | <i>measure</i> | Di-m., m. <i>out</i> |
| ōrdīrī | ōrsus sum | <i>begin</i> | O, ab. with |
| orīrī | ortus sum | <i>rise</i> | Sol oritur |
| | Fut. part.: oritūrus | | Tempestas co-o. |

Note: Orīrī and its cpds. exc. adorīrī follow the 3d Conjugation: *ōreris*, *ōritur* etc. The only forms of the 4th Conjugation are:

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| orīrī and orīrer etc. | = <i>ōrerer</i> etc. |
| 550 adorīrī | adortus sum |

attack

Caligo ob-o
F Rhenus oritus
Ex hepontiiis

Adoriris

214. VERBA IMPERSONALIA : IMPERSONAL VERBS

A verb is used impersonally, when its action is ascribed to an indeterminate subject. This subject is indicated by the 3d ps. sg. neuter:

ningit, **it** snows.

By usage, however, all those verbal forms of the 3d ps. which do not take a substantive as their subject, are (less accurately) called impersonal; their determinate subjects may be pronouns, numeral-adjectives, infinitives, phrases or clauses:

hōc licet; vīxisse eum paenitet;
fit, ut de eādem rē aliud aliī videātur.

Forms of impersonal verbs (219)

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Pres. | : paenitet, | paeniteat, | paenitēre |
| Impf. | : paenitēbat, | paenitērēt | — |
| Fut. I. | : paenitēbit | — | — |
| Perf. | : paenituit, | paenituerit, | paenituisse |
| Plupf. | : paenituerat, | paenituisset | |
| Fut. II. | : paenituerit | — | — |

Note: The imperative is supplied by the subjunctive:

Pudeat tē, *be ashamed*

215. 1. Always impersonal are:

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Paenitēre | paenitet | paenituit | <i>repent</i> |
| pigēre | piget | piguit | <i>annoy</i> |
| pudēre | pudet | {puduit {puditumest | { <i>put to</i> { <i>shame</i> |
| taedēre | taedet | pertaesum est | <i>disgust</i> |
| 555 miserēre | miseret | {personal form {miseritus sum | { <i>move to</i> { <i>pity</i> |
| oportēre | oportet | oportuit | <i>ought</i> |
| rēferre | rēfert | rētulit | { <i>be of</i> { <i>moment</i> |

Eum huius rei

paenitet (p., p.,
t., m.,):

He repents,
is annoyed etc.

Te ire oportet

Hoc mea nihil
refert

216. 2. Usually impersonal are:

a. Verbs denoting operations of nature:

| | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|----------|-------------------|
| fulgēre | fulget | fulsit | <i>lighten</i> |
| tonāre | tonat | tonuit | <i>thunder</i> |
| 560 pluere | pluit | pluit | <i>rain</i> |
| ningere | ningit | (nīnxit) | <i>snow</i> |
| lūcēre | lūcet | lūxit | <i>be light</i> |
| lūcēscere | lūcēscit | lūxit | <i>grow light</i> |
| advesperāscere | | (-āvit) | <i>grow dark</i> |

Tonat, **it** th's;
but also
Iuppiter tonat

Dilucescit;
but also:
Dies illucescit

b. Four other verbs:

| | | | | |
|------------|--------|---------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 565 decēre | decet | decuīt | <i>be becoming</i> | Ea te decent |
| dēdecere | -decet | -decuīt | <i>be unbecom'g</i> | Te irasci dedecet |
| libēre | libet | libuīt | <i>suit</i> | Hoc mihi libet |
| licēre | licet | licuīt | <i>be allowed</i> | Haec ei licent |

217. 3. Personal in one meaning,

Impersonal in another are:

| | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|---|---|
| iuvāre | iuvat | iūvit | <i>delight</i> | Me iuvat, it d. |
| 570 fallere | fallit | fefellit | <i>escape</i> | Me fallit |
| fugere | fugit | fūgit | <i>escape</i> | Me fugit |
| praeterīre | praeterit | praeteriit | <i>escape</i> | Me praeterit |
| appārēre | appāret | appāruit | <i>be evident</i> | Deum esse appa- ret, l., p., c. |
| liquēre | liquet | licuit | <i>be clear</i> | |
| 575 patēre | patet | patuit | <i>be manifest</i> | |
| cōnstāre | cōnstat | cōnstitit | <i>be well known</i> | |
| condūcere | condūcit | condūxit | <i>serve</i> | Te id facere Conducit, expe- dit, convenit |
| expedīre | expedit | expedīvit | <i>be useful</i> | |
| convenīre | convenit | convēnit | <i>be fit</i> | |
| 580 fierī | fit | factum est | happen: <i>fit etc.,</i> ut | Omnia fiunt |
| accidere | accidit | accidit | | Mala accidunt |
| contingere | contingit | contigit | | Bona contingunt |
| ēvenīre | ēvenit | ēvēnit | | B. et m. eveniunt |
| restāre | restat | restitit | <i>remain</i> | Restat, ut |
| 585 accēdere | accēdit | accessit | <i>be added</i> | Accedit ut, quod |
| placēre | placet | placuit | <i>please</i> | Mihi placet |
| praestāre | praestat | praestitit | <i>be better</i> | Mihi praestat |
| attinēre | attinet | attinuit | <i>concern</i> | Ad me attinet |
| interesse | interest | interfuit | <i>be of moment</i> | Eius, mea interest |

218. 4. The Passive of Intransitive Verbs

Venītur, *they (impers.) come*; ventum est, *they came*

pūgnātur, *there is fighting*; pūgnātum est, *there was a fight*

But also: pūgna pūgnāta est, *the fight was fought*

219. *Note:* Excepting the infinitive, **noun-forms** of impersonal verbs are **rare**:

Indūcī ad pudendum, ad pigendum.

Tanta vīs fuit paenitendī (*sorrow*).

Errōrem corrigere paenitendō.

Cōnsiliī nostrī nōbīs paenitendum putō.

Libēns, pudēns, paenitēns, } *are*
willing, modest, repentant, } *adjectives*

220. VERBA DEFECTIVA : DEFECTIVE VERBS

590 Coepī, *have begun* (supplied by incipiō)

incipere coepī { inceptum *begin*
 { **coeptus**

Perfect System complete: coepī, coeperim... coepisse;

Partic. System only: coeptus, coeptus sum, coeptum esse.

Note: Coeptus sum, instead of coepī, is used with a passive infinitive which has passive meaning; the same holds good of dēsitus sum, instead of dēsī (dēstitī):

Rēs mōvērī **coepta est**, *the thing began to be moved*;
but rēs mōvērī coepit, *the thing began to move itself*;
res lābī coepit, *the thing began to move.*

(The 1st infin. has *passive*, the 2d *reflexive*, the 3d *active* meaning.)

meminī, mementō, *remember*

Perfect System { meminī, memineram, meminērō etc., meminisse
complete } *remember, remembered, shall remember, to rem.*

Imperative: mēmentō, mementōte, *remember*

(*Supplied by reminīscī; recordārī*)

ōdī, ōsūrus, *hate*

Perfect System { ōdī, ōderam, ōderō, etc. ōdisse
complete } *hate, hated, shall hate, to hate*

Partic. System: ōsūrus, ōsūrus sum, ōsūrum esse

Passive : odiō esse alicuī, in odiō esse apud...

(*Supplied by odium in aliquem habēre.*)

āiō, *I affirm, I say* **yes** (Negō from negāre: *I say no.*)

Pres. Indic.: āiō, ais, **ait**; āiunt; Perfect Indic.: **ait**.

Impf. Indic.: āiēbam, āiēbās etc.

Ain (= aisne)? *Really, indeed, is it possible?*

inquam (inserted in direct quotations), **say I, said I.**

Pres. Indic.: inquām, inquis, **inquit**; inquiunt

Impf. “ — — inquitēbat;

Future “ — inquiēs, inquiet

Perfect “ — inquisti, **inquit**

Videō, videō, inquam, nōn cōgitō solum.

(Supplied by dicere.)

595 fandō audīre, *learn by hearsay.*

affārī affātur, affātus sum *address*

praefārī praefātur, praefātus sum *say beforehand*

Note: Forms of fārī (*speak*) and its cpds. are rare

quaesō, quaesumus: *I, we beg*

Note: Quaesō is used especially to soften the imperative:

Quaesō, attende,.....; attende quaesō.....

quaesō, ut attendātis; quaesō, quid hōc est?

salvē, salvēte; salvēre tē iubeō:

used at meeting: *hail! welcome!*

valē, valēte; valēre tē iubeō:

used at separating: *farewell!*

havē (avē), havēte (avēte); havēre (avēre) te iubeō:

used at both meeting and separating: *hail, farewell!*

600. cedo, *say, let us hear! give, out with it!*

cedo, quid postea? *let us hear, what then?*

cedō, quaesō, codicem: *please, hand the book,*

221.

VERBA ANOMALA = IRREGULAR VERBS

| esse, sum, fuī, futūrus, to be | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------|--------------------|-----------|
| Indicātīvus | | | Coniūnctīvus (183) | |
| Praesēns: I am | | | | |
| 1. | sum | sumus | sim | sīmus |
| 2. | es | estis | sīs | sītis |
| 3. | est | sunt | sit | sint |
| Imperfectum : I was | | | | |
| 1. | eram | erāmus | essem | essēmus |
| 2. | erās | erātis | essēs | essētis |
| 3. | erat | erant | esset | essent |
| Futūrum I.: I shall be | | | | |
| 1. | erō | erimus | | |
| 2. | eris | eritis | | |
| 3. | erit | erunt | | |
| Perfectum: I was, I have been. | | | | |
| 1. | fuī | fuimus | fuerim | fuerimus |
| 2. | fuistī | fuistis | fueris | fueritis |
| 3. | fuit | fuērunt | fuerit | fuerint |
| Plūsquamperfectum: I had been | | | | |
| 1. | fueram | fuerāmus | fuissem | fuissēmus |
| 2. | fuerās | fuerātis | fuissēs | fuissētis |
| 3. | fuerat | fuerant | fuisset | fuissent |
| Futūrum II. : I shall have been | | | | |
| 1. | fuerō | fuerimus | | |
| 2. | fueris | fueritis | | |
| 3. | fuerit | fūerint | | |

Probus sum, improbus nōn sum;

Puerī probī sumus, erimus.....

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|---------------------------|
| Imperātīvus praesentis: | es <i>be thou</i> | este <i>be ye</i> |
| Imperātīvus futūrī: | estō <i>thou shalt be</i> | estōte <i>ye shall be</i> |
| Infīnitīvus praesentis: | esse | <i>to be</i> |
| Infīnitīvus perfectī: | fuisse | <i>to have been</i> |
| Infīnitīvus futūrī | { futūrum, am, um etc. esse or: fore (unchangeable) | <i>to be about to be</i> |
| Participium futūrī: | futūrus, a, um | <i>about to be</i> |

222. Instead of estō, **he shall be**, and suntō, **they shall be** commonly **sit** and **sint** are used (204)

Note: Forem, forēs, foret, forent = essem, essēs, esset, essent.

223. Compounds of esse

| | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|----------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. abesse | absum | āfuī | āfutūrus | <i>be absent</i> |
| | absēns | absent | | |
| 2. adesse | { adsum { assum | adfuī affuī | adfutūrus affutūrus | <i>be present</i> |
| | praesēns | present | | |
| 3. dēesse | dēsum | dēfuī | dēfutūrus | <i>be lacking</i> |
| 4. interesse | intersum | interfuī | interfutūrus | <i>be among</i> |
| 5. obesse | obsum | obfuī | obfutūrus | <i>hinder</i> |
| 6. praeeße | praesum | praefuī | praefutūrus | <i>have charge of</i> |
| 7. prōdesse | prōsum | prōfuī | prōfutūrus | <i>be useful</i> |
| 8. superesse | supersum | superfuī | superfutūrus | <i>be left, remain</i> |
| 9. inesse | īnsum | (fuī in) | | <i>be in</i> |
| 10. subesse | subsum | (fuī sub) | | <i>be under, near</i> |

224. Note: Prōdesse is a compound of **prōd** (= prō) and esse: its **d** appears **before e** only: prōdes, prōderō.

225. Note: Ab urbe abest

Prudentia ei deest

Tibi obsum, prosum

Nulli de inimicis supersunt

In eo (in) est scientia

Ad portam adest

Pugnae navali interest

Exercitui praeest

Spes salutis tibi superest

In ea re subest suspicio

Rhenus, hiems subest

226. Posse, possum, potuī be able, can

Indicātivus

Coniūctivus

| | | | | |
|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| Praes.: { | pos-sum | pos-sumus | pos-sim | pos-sīmus |
| | pot-es | pot-estis | pos-sis | pos-sītis |
| | pot-est | pos-sunt | pos-sit | pos-sint |

Impf.: **pot-eram** etc. pot-eramus etc. **pos=sem** etc. pos-sēmus etc.

Fut. I: pot-erō etc. pot-erimus etc.

Pf. S'ms.: pot-uī, pot-uerim, pot-ueram, pot-uissem, pot-uerō

Infin.: **posse**, *to be able* **potuisse**, *to have been able*

potēns (adj.), *mighty*

(No other forms)

Note: Posse is a compound of pot (=pote, *able*) and sum

possum = pote sum; posse = pote esse

potuī and potēns are forms of a former verb potēre.

227. Edere, ēdī, ēsum, eat : regular (See vb. 285)

Secondary Forms

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| ēs, ēst, ēstis | = | edīſ, edit, editis |
| ēsem, ēssēs, ēsset etc. | = | ederem, ederēs, ederet etc. |
| ēs, ēste; ēstō, ēstōte | = | ede, edite; editō, editōte |
| ēsse | = | edere |
| ēstur, ēssētur | = | editur, ederētur |

Note: The long ē alone distinguishes the secondary forms of edere from the forms of sum beginning with es.

228. Ferre, ferō, tulī, lātum, carry, bear

Praesēns indicātivī

Actīvum

Passīvum

| | | | |
|---------|---------|--------|----------|
| 1. ferō | ferimus | feror | ferimur |
| 2. fers | fertis | ferris | feriminī |
| 3. fert | ferunt | fertur | feruntur |

Imperfectum coniūctivī

| | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. ferrem etc. | ferrer etc. |
|----------------|-------------|

228.

| | | |
|-----------------|--|--|
| Imperāt. praes. | fer , <i>carry thou</i> | fer te , <i>carry ye</i> |
| Imperāt. fūt. | ferto , <i>thou shalt carry</i> | fertōte , <i>ye shall carry</i> |
| Infinitivī | ferre , <i>to carry</i> | ferri , <i>to be carried</i> |

Note: All other forms are regular :

feram, ferās etc.

feram ferēs etc.

tulī, tulerīm etc.

lātus sum, sim etc.

Distinguish : ferēs, ferrēs;

ferris, ferēris, ferrēris

229.

Compounds of **ferre**

| | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|---|---|
| afferre | attulī | allātum | <i>carry to, bring</i> | Tibi nuntium a. |
| anteferre | antetuli | antelatum | <i>prefer</i> | Hoc isti rei a. |
| auferre | abstulī | ablātum | <i>carry away</i> | Id tibi (a te) au. |
| cōnferre | contulī | collātum | { <i>carry together</i> <i>compare</i> | Signa aliquo c. Tecum eum c. |
| Mē Rōmam c., <i>I go to Rome</i> | | | | |
| dēferre | dētulī | dēlātum | { <i>bear to</i> <i>report</i> | Litteras ad te d. Rem ad eum d. |
| differre | distulī | dilātum | <i>put off</i> | Id in posterum d. |
| differe | — | — | <i>differ</i> | Re non d. ab |
| efferre | extulī | ēlātum | <i>carry out of</i> | Me e., <i>am haughty</i> |
| inferre | intulī | illatum | <i>carry into</i> | Sociis bellum i. |
| offerre | obtuli | oblātum | <i>offer</i> | Ultro me ei o. |
| praeferre | praetuli | praelatum | <i>prefer</i> | |
| referre | rettulī | relātum | <i>carry back</i> | Gratiam r. pro, <i>return thanks</i> (<i>in</i> <i>deed</i>); gratias agere, <i>in word</i> |
| sufferre | { sustinui sustuli | sustentatum | <i>suffer, endure</i> | |
| tollere | sustulī | sublātum | { <i>lift, raise</i> <i>do away with</i> | Saxa, <i>clamorem t.</i> Te de medio t. |
| extollere | extulī | ēlātum | <i>raise, exalt</i> | Caput extollit |

Memoriam fuisse in eō singulārem ferunt

It is related that he had a memory extraordinary

230. velle, volō, voluī, **will**, wish, want
 nōlle, nōlō, nōluī, **won't**, don't want
 mälle, mālō, māluī, choose rather, **prefer**

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|---|--|
| Praesēns indicātīvī | volō vīs vult volumus vultis volunt | nōlō nōn vīs nōn vult nolumus nōn vultis nōlunt | mālō māvis māvult mālumus māvultis mālunt |
| Praesēns coniūctīvī | velim velīs velit velimus velitis velint | nōlim nōlis nōlit nōlimus nōlitis nōlint | mālim mālis mālit mālimus mālitis mālint |
| Imperfectum indicātīvī | volēbam volēbās etc. | nōlēbam nōlēbās etc. | mālēbam mālēbās etc. |
| Imperfectum coniūctīvī | vellem vellēs etc. | nōllem nōllēs etc. | māllem māllēs etc. |
| Futūrum I. | volam volēs etc. | nōlam nōlēs etc. | mālam mālēs etc. |
| Imperāt. praes. Imperāt. fut. | — — | nōlī nōlīte nōlītō nōlītōte | — — |
| Infinīt praes. | velle | nōlle | mälle |
| Partic. praes. | (cupiēns) | (invītus) | — |
| Perfect Systems | voluī, voluerim, nōluī, nōluerim, māluī, māluerim, | volueram, voluissē, nōlueram, nōluissē, mālueram, māluissē, | voluerō nōluerō māluerō |

Note: Distinguish nōllēs and nōlēs, māllēs and mālēs.
 Nōlō is composed of ne volō; mālō of mage volō.

231. Sīs (= sī vīs) *if you please*
 nōlī laudāre *don't praise*
 nōlīte laudāre *don't praise*
- Volō probus esse *I want to be honest*
 Volō tē probum esse *I want you to be honest*
 Volō tibi; (tuā causā) *I wish you well*

232. ire, eō, iī, itum, to go

| | | | | | | |
|------------------|---|-------------------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------|
| Praes. indic. | eō | īs | it | imus | itis | eunt |
| Praes. coni. | eam | eās | eat | eāmus | eātis | eant |
| Imperf. indic. | ibam | ibās | ibat | ibāmus | ibatis | ibant |
| Imperf. coni. | irem | irēs | iret | irēmus | irētis | irent |
| Futūrum I. | ibō | ibis | ibit | ibimus | ibitis | ibunt |
| Perf. indic. | iī | istī | iit | iimus | istis | iērunt |
| Perf. coni. | ierim | ieris | ierit | ierimus | ieritis | ierint |
| Plūsq'p. indic. | ieram | ierās | ierat | ierāmus | ierātis | ierant |
| Plūsq'p. coni. | issem | issēs | isset | issēmus | issētis | issent |
| Futūrum II. | ierō | ieris | ierit | ierimus | ieritis | ierint |
| Imperāt. praes. | ī | <i>go thou</i> | | īte | <i>go ye</i> | |
| Imperāt. fut. | itō | <i>thou shalt go</i> | | itōte | <i>ye shall go</i> | |
| Infīnīt. praes. | īre | <i>to go</i> | | | | |
| Infīnīt. perf. | īsse , | <i>to have gone</i> | | | | |
| Infīnīt. fut. | itūrum etc., | <i>esse to be about to go</i> | | | | |
| Particip. praes. | iēns (Gen. euntis) | <i>going</i> | | | | |
| Particip. fut. | itūrus , a um | <i>about to go</i> | | | | |
| Gerundium | (ad) eundum , ī, ō (<i>to or for</i>) <i>going....</i> | | | | | |
| Supīna | itum , itū | | | | | |

233.**Passive**

itur ibātur ibitur itum est etc., *they (impers.) go, were g. etc.*
 eātur irētur — itum sit etc., *they may go, would go, etc.*
 Gerundivum: **eundum est** *one must go*
 mihi, tibi, eī, eundum est, *I, you, he must go*

234.**Intransitive compounds of ire**

| | | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|----------|-----------------|--|
| abīre | abeō | abīi | abitum | <i>go away</i> | } Passive: abītur, ábitum est abeundum est, etc. |
| prōdīre | prōdeō | prodīi | prōditum | <i>go forth</i> | |
| redīre | redeō | redīi | reditum | <i>go back</i> | |

| | | |
|------------------|---|----------------------|
| magistrātū abīre | } | <i>resign office</i> |
| or sē abdicāre | | |

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| in pūblicum prōdīre | <i>go out in public</i> |
|---------------------|-------------------------|

| | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| in gratiam redīre cum.. | <i>be reconciled</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------------|

237. fierī, fiō, factus sum, become, happen, be made

| | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|---|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| Pres. I. | fiō | fīs | fit | (fīmus | fītis) | fīunt |
| Pres. S. | fīam | fīās | fīat | fīāmus | fīātis | fīant |
| Imp. I. | fīēbam | fīēbas | fīēbat | fīēbāmus | fīēbātis | fīēbant |
| Imp. S. | fierem | fierēs | fieret | fierēmus | fierētis | fierent |
| Fut. I. | fīam | fīēs | fīet | fīēmus | fīētis | fīent |
| Pf. S'm | factus sum, eram, erō, sim, essem | | | | | |
| I'tive | not used, supplied by fīās, fīātis, fīat, fīant | | | | | |
| Inf. Pr. | fieri | become, happen, be made | | | | |
| Inf. Pf. | factum etc., esse | have become, been made | | | | |
| Inf. Ft. | fore or futūrum etc. esse | { be about to be (come) be about to happen | | | | |
| I. F. Pass. | factum iri | be about to be made | | | | |
| P'c. Pr. | — | | | | | |
| P'c. Pf. | factus etc. | made, that has become | | | | |
| P'c. Ft. | futūrus etc. | about to be (come), happen | | | | |
| Ger'dive | faciendus etc. | that must be made | | | | |

1. Bonus, senex fiō *I **become** good, an old man*
Quid eō fiet? *What will become of him?*
2. Scelera fiunt *Crimes **occur***
Ut fit *As it usually happens*
3. Cōsul fiō *I **am made** a consul*
Cupiditāte caecus fiō *I am blinded by passion*
Opera ab iis fiebant *The w. were being constructed*

Note: Inchoatives (pg. 98) are often preferred to fierī, become:

Lūcēscit, senēscō

With *things* cōfici, perfici are preferred to fierī, be made:

Opera perficiuntur

Note: The i before er (in fierī and fierem) is short.

238

PRAEPOSITIONES = PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions denote:

1. Relations of **space**;
2. Relations of **time**;
3. Other relations (of **manner, purpose, cause** etc.)

239. I. Prepositions used with the Accusative and the Ablative:

IN

| | |
|--|--|
| 1. in urbem, in Italiam in montem in vallem | <i>into the capital (in) to Italy up the mountain, down into the valley</i> |
| 2. in multam noctem in annum in posterum diem | <i>till late in the night for (the space of) a year for the following day</i> |
| 3. eius in patrem amor oratio in Catilinam in utramque partem hunc in modum | <i>love for his father speech against Catiline for and against in this manner</i> |
| 1. in urbe, in capite pontem in flumine facere | <i>in the city, on the head to make a bridge over the river</i> |
| 2. bis in diē | <i>twice a day (in the course of)</i> |
| 3. in septem sapientissimus in hoc homine..... in summā senectūte | <i>the wisest among the seven; (of) in the case of this man... in spite of extreme old age</i> |

SUB

| | |
|--|---|
| 1. sub iugum mittere sub montem succedere | <i>to send under the yoke to come to the foot of the mountain</i> |
| 2. sub noctem sub haec dicta | <i>shortly before nightfall just after these words</i> |
| 3. sub (in) potestatem redigere | <i>subdue, bring under the power of</i> |
| 1. sub monte considere sub divo | <i>to settle at the foot of the (mountain) under the open sky</i> |
| 2. sub ipsa profectioe | <i>at the time of the departure</i> |
| 3. sub imperio alicuius esse | <i>to be in the power of someone</i> |

240. II. Prepositions used with the Ablative only

Ab, ā, ex, ē, dē,
cōram, prō and prae,
tenus, cum, sine.

Note 1: ā and ē are used before **consonants** only;

ab and ex are used before **any** letter.

(ab is rarely used before b, p, f, v, m.)

Note 2: mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum (117);
quōcum or cum quō, quācum or cum quā etc. (132);
in all other cases cum precedes.

Ab, a (opp. - ad)

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. ab urbe venīre | <i>to come from the city</i> |
| 2. ā prīmīs temporibus | <i>from the first times</i> |
| ā pueritiā = a puerō (puerīs) | <i>from boyhood</i> |
| ab urbe conditā | <i>after (since) the building of Rome</i> |
| 3. ab aliquō laudārī | <i>to be praised by somebody</i> |
| ab aliquō flāgitāre | <i>to demand from somebody</i> |
| tē ab eō dēfendō, tueor | <i>I defend you against him</i> |
| ā tē = abs tē | <i>by you</i> |

Ex, e, (opp. in)

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. (ex) urbe pellere | <i>to drive out of the city</i> |
| ex equō dēsīlire | <i>to jump from the horse</i> |
| ex equō pugnāre | <i>to fight on horseback</i> |
| ē regiōne sōlis | <i>exactly opposite the sun</i> |
| 2. ex quō; ex eō tempore, quō | <i>since, since the time that</i> |
| 3. ē rē publicā | <i>for the good of the state</i> |
| ex sententiā | <i>according to one's wish</i> |
| ex aequō | <i>in accordance with fairness</i> |
| ex tempore dīcere | <i>{ speak acc. to the circumstances { on the spur of the moment</i> |

DE, (betw. ab and ex)

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1. dē mūrō dēicere | <i>to throw down from the wall</i> |
| dē terrā saxum tollere | <i>to lift the rock up from the ground</i> |
| 2. dē nocte profectus est | <i>he set out before the end of night</i> |
| 3. dē aliquā rē dīcere | <i>to speak about something</i> |
| quā dē causā | <i>for which reason</i> |
| dē sententiā | <i>according to the opinion of</i> |
| dē tē bene mereor | <i>I deserve well of you</i> |
| but: tua in mē merita | <i>your deserts in my behalf</i> |

CORAM { rare as preposition
 { frequent as adverb

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. cōram generō meō | <i>in the presence of my son-in-law</i> |
| Adverbially: cōram adest | <i>he is present in person</i> |

PRO

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. prō aede sedēre | <i>{ to sit before the temple</i> <i>{ (i. e. the back turned towards it)</i> |
| but ante aedem | <i>before (i. e. facing) the temple</i> |
| prō suggestū | <i>on the (front part of the) tribune</i> |
| 2. — | — |
| 3. prō libertāte morī | <i>to die for liberty (in defence of)</i> |
| prō cōsule proficīscor | <i>I set out in place of the consul</i> |
| prō vectūrā solvō | <i>I pay for the transportation</i> |
| prō certō hōc dīcō | <i>I say this for certain</i> |
| prō tuā prūdentiā | <i>in accordance with your wisdom</i> |
| prō tempore (et rē) | <i>according to circumstances</i> |

PRAE

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. prae sē ferre (pugiōnem) | <i>to carry (a dagger) before one's self</i> |
| 2. — | — |
| 3. aliquid prae sē ferre | <i>to show (make a show of) something</i> |
| prae maerōre loquī nōn potuit | <i>for (prevented by) sadness (he could not speak)</i> |
| prae ceterīs iustus | <i>just, compared with the rest</i> |
| but praeter ceterōs iustus | <i>juster than the rest</i> |

Note: Prae sē is used with ferre, gerere, mittere, agere.

TENUS

(Postpositive; mostly poetical)

1. Taurō tenus rēgnāre *to rule as far as the Taurus*

CUM

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. cum patre vēnit | <i>he came with his father</i> |
| 2. cum primā lūce domum vēnit | <i>he came home at early dawn</i> |
| 3. cum togā pullā sedeō | <i>I sit in the dark toga</i> [sword |
| cum gladiō in eum invāsit | <i>he rushed upon him with a</i> |
| aliquid sēcum reputāre | } <i>to think, reflect about someth.</i> |
| aliquid cum animō suō reputāre | |

SINE

3. Sine ūllā spē *without any hope*

241. III. Prepositions used with the Accusative only

Apud, ad and penes;
iūxtā, prope, propter;
ob, adversus, ergā, contrā;
īnfrā, suprā, intrā, extrā;
citrā, ūltrā, cis and trāns;
ante, post, secundum, praeter;
circum, circā, circiter;
super, per and inter.

APUD (used chiefly with persons).

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. apud eum sedēbat | <i>he sat near him</i> |
| apud senātum verba fēcit | <i>he spoke before the senate</i> |
| 2. apud māiōrēs nostrōs | <i>at the time of our ancestors</i> |
| 3. apud Platōnem | <i>in the works of Plato</i> |
| <i>but:</i> in Phaedrō Platōnis | <i>in Pluto's Phaedrus</i> |
| apud amīcum cēnāvī | <i>I dined in the house of my friend</i> |
| apud mē impius nihil valet | <i>an impious person has no influence over me</i> |

AD (used chiefly with places)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. ad urbem esse, ad Cannās | <i>to be near the city; near Cannae</i> |
| ad flūmen esse | <i>to be near (on the banks of)</i> |
| ad urbem ire | <i>to go to the city</i> [the river] |
| ad amīcum venīre, scribere | <i>to come, write to him</i> |
| usque ad castra accessit | <i>he approached as far as the camp</i> |
| ad Océanum (versus) | <i>towards the Ocean</i> |
| 2. ad multam noctem | <i>till late in the night</i> |
| ad vesperum | <i>toward evening</i> |
| 3. homō ad aliquid ūtilis | <i>a man useful for something</i> [400] |
| ad quadringentōs sunt | <i>there are about (they amount to)</i> |
| ad ūnum omnēs adsunt | <i>all without exception are present</i> |
| <i>but</i> praeter ūnum omnēs | <i>all with the exception of one</i> |
| ad verbum | <i>word for word</i> |

PENES (with persons only)

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 3 Penes Caesarem | <i>under the control, in the power of Caesar</i> |
|------------------|--|

IUXTA, PROPE, PROPTER

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. iūxtā mūrū | <i>close to the wall</i> |
| prope mūrū = prope (adv.) | <i>near the wall</i> |
| ā mūrō | |
| propter mūrū consēdimus | <i>we sat down near the wall</i> |
| Note: Also the adj. propior, | } <i>take the accus. (or the dative)</i> |
| proximus | |
| and the adv. propius, proximē | |
| 3. propter pācem | <i>on account of the actual peace</i> |
| but pācis causā (Position!) | <i>for the sake of obtaining peace</i> |

OB

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. exsilium mihi ob oculos versatur | <i>banishment is before my eyes</i> |
| 3. ob eam causam | <i>for that reason</i> |

ADVERSUS, ERGA, CONTRA(Commonly of *hostile, friendly, hostile feelings*)

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. adversus or contrā montem | <i>opposite the mountain</i> |
| 3. adversus or contrā hostem | <i>against the enemy</i> |
| adversus illum est modestus | <i>towards him he is modest</i> |
| summus ergā vōs amor | <i>his great love for you</i> |
| voluntās ergā Caesarem | <i>good-will for Caesar</i> |

INFRA, SUPRA, INTRA, EXTRA

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. infra sīdera, suprā sīdera | below <i>the stars</i> , above <i>the stars</i> |
| intra fīnēs, extrā fīnēs | within <i>the borders</i> , outside |
| 2. intra decem annōs | <i>within ten years</i> [the borders] |

CITRA, ULTRA, CIS and TRANS

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. citra Rhēnum, ūltrā Rhēnum | on this side of , beyond <i>the Rhine</i> |
| cis Rhēnum, trāns Rhēnum | bordering <i>on this side</i> , <i>on the farther side</i> |

ANTE, POST, SECUNDUM, PRAETER

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. ante castra (see prō) | before (i. e. facing) <i>the camp</i> |
| post castra | behind <i>the camp</i> |
| 2. ante lūcem | <i>before daybreak</i> |
| post proelium | after <i>the battle</i> |
| post hominum memoriam | <i>as far as records go back</i> |
| 1. iter secundum mare | <i>a march along the sea-coast</i> |
| 2. secundum lūdōs | immediately after <i>the games</i> |
| 3. secundum Deum parentēs amandī | next to <i>God our p. are to be loved</i> |
| secundum nātūrā (opp. contrā) | in accordance with <i>nature</i> |
| 1. praeter castra | past <i>the camp</i> |
| 3. praeter cōsuētūdinem | <i>contrary to custom</i> |
| praeter modum | <i>beyond measure</i> |
| praeter tē nēmō (see prae) | <i>no one except you</i> |

CIRCUM, CIRCA, CIRCITER

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. circum urbem | <i>round the city</i> |
| templa circā fōrum | <i>the temples about the forum</i> |
| 2. circiter meridiem | <i>about noon</i> |

Note: Circiter usually is an adverb: mediā circiter nocte.

SUPER

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. tectum super conclāvia | <i>the roof over (on top of) the rooms</i> |
| but: suprā conclāvia | <i>above (not touching) the rooms</i> |
| super (suprā) Sūnium nāvigāre | <i>to sail beyond Sunium</i> |

PER

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. per urbem fluit | <i>it flows through the city</i> |
| per mediōs hostēs (Position!) | <i>through the midst of the enemies</i> |
| per orbem terrārum | <i>all over the globe</i> |
| 2. per hiemem | <i>throughout the winter</i> |
| per noctem | <i>during the night</i> |
| 3. hōc per prōcūratōrem factum est | <i>{ it was done through the agency of a steward, by a steward</i> |
| per litterās colloquī | <i>to converse by (means of) letters</i> |
| per vim plūrimum possunt | <i>they can accomplish much through</i> |
| per deōs iūrāre | <i>to swear by the gods [violence</i> |
| per mē licet | <i>as far as I am concerned, you may</i> |
| per valetūdinem venīre nōn | <i>on account of ill health I cannot</i> |
| possum | <i>come</i> |

INTER

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. inter Sēquanōs et Helvetiōs | <i>between the territory of...</i> |
| 2. diēs 45 inter bīnōs lūdōs | <i>between the two games</i> |
| inter cēnam | <i>during dinner</i> |
| 3. inter amīcōs | <i>between (among) friends</i> |
| inter nōs amāmus | <i>we love one another</i> |

242. POSITION OF THE PREPOSITIONS

The place of the preposition is **immediately** before (sometimes after) its noun:

Dē rēbus in urbe gestīs
 Contrā lēgem et prō lēge
 Contrā lēgem et pro eā
 Intrā mūnitiōnēs et extrā (adv.)

243. QUE and other enclitics

should not be appended to { a b, ā, ad, : ā Caesareque
 { apud, ob, sub : ob eamque rem
may be appended to **ex** and **in** { in eamque rem
 { inque eam rem
are (usually) appended to **all other** prepos.: dēque Caesare.

Note: Some prepositions retain their **original** use as **ad-verbs** in the following meanings:

| | 1. | 2. | 3. |
|----------|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| ante | : <i>in front</i> | <i>previously</i> | — |
| post | : <i>behind</i> | <i>afterwards</i> | — |
| suprā | : <i>above</i> | <i>previously</i> | <i>beyond</i> |
| infrā | : <i>underneath</i> | — | — |
| cōram | : <i>in one's presence</i> | — | <i>personally</i> |
| prope | : <i>near</i> | — | <i>nearly</i> |
| extrā | : <i>without</i> | — | — |
| ūltrā | : <i>on the other side</i> | — | — |
| circum | : <i>all around</i> | — | — |
| circiter | : — | <i>about</i> | <i>about</i> |

244. CONIUNCTIONES = CONJUNCTIONS

Conjunctions are words used to **connect** words, phrases, clauses or sentences. They are of two kinds:

Co-ordinate Conjunctions joining **co-ordinate elements of a sentence** (words, phrases, dependent clauses having the same grammatical relation, independent clauses), and

Subordinate Conjunctions joining **subordinate clauses to principal (leading) clauses**.

COORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

245. Coniunctiones copulativæ = Copulative Conjunctions

(Denoting union)

| | |
|--|--------------------------|
| et | and |
| que (enclitic) | and |
| ac (only before consonants exc. c, g, q) | and |
| atque (before any letter) | and |
| etiam | also, even (91) |
| atque etiam | and also |
| quoque (postpositive) | also, too |
| nē - quidem (separated by the word emphasized) | { not even not either |
| neque | and not; nor (146) |

Uses of the preceding conjunctions

1. Three or more words are connected as follows:

avus **et** pater **et** filius : Polysyndeton

avus, pater, filius : Asyndeton

avus, pater, filius**que**

Abiit, excessit, ēvāsīt, ērūpīt.

2. **Que** unites things that belong to one another:

famēs sitisque, *hunger and thirst*

ferrō ignīque, *with fire and sword*

3. **Atque** and **ac** often emphasize the word following:

Is ā cōstantiā atque ā mente atque ā sē ipse discessit.

4. Et, – que, atque } may express: **and indeed**
(often with is)

Summa voluptās et (ea or quidem) sempiterna

multī clārī cīvēs *many famous citizens*

multī **et** clārī cīvēs **many** (and indeed) *famous c.*

5. **Etiam** nunc morāris? *Even now?* (emphasizing)

Quoque joins (usually without emphasis) words only:

Antonius quoque = Antonius etiam

6. Ac nē illud quidem { *and not even this*
 { *neither ... this*

7. **neque** enim (nōn enim) *for not*

neque tamen (nōn tamen) *yet not*

neque vērō (nōn autem) *but not*

neque enim quisquam *for nobody*

neque enim quicquam *for nothing*

neque enim ūlla causa *for no cause*

neque enim umquam *for never*

Note: Et nōn = ac nōn, et nēmō, et numquam etc. emphasize the negation:

breve et nōn difficile *short and not difficult*

246. Coniunctiones disiunctivae : Disjunctive Conjunctions

(Denoting separation)

aut, vel, -ve, sive, or

(Ve, enclitic, is used to join words only.)

USES

1. **Aut** a) excludes: { *Hic vincendum aut moriendum*
 Here you must conquer or die
 b) corrects: { *Cūctī aut magna pars*
 All or (more accurately) a great part
2. **Vel, -ve, sive** permit choice (*velle*):

Zēnō vel Chrysippus Z. or (if you choose) Ch.

plūs minusve *more or less*

| trēs quattuorve | *three or four* |

Bacchus sive Liber *B. or (also called) L.*

vel potius, sive potius } or rather
sen potius, atque adeo }

Note : Vel, as **adverb**, = 1) *even*, 2) *the very*:

¹⁾ Id vel ex hōc cognōscī potest

2) Vel maximus (91, c).

247. Coniunctiones adversativae: Adversative Conjunctions

(Denoting opposition)

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| sed | but |
| vērūm (stronger than sed) | but |
| at (contrasting) | but |
| atquī (stronger than at) | but now; but anyhow |
| vērō (assūring) | however, but... indeed |
| autem | but; (often = now, and) |
| tamen (after a concessive) | however yet, nevertheless |
| vērūm enim vērō | but truly |

USES

1. **Sed** **vērūm**, **ut**, **atque** are placed at the **beginning** of a sentence; **vērō**, **autem** are placed **after the first word**, prepositions not counted; **tamen** is placed either **before or after** the first word.

2. **At** is used to introduce **objections** (= *dīcēs*).

3. **Atquē** is used chiefly in argument.

4. **Autem** expresses of all adversative conjunctions, the weakest opposition; and may often be left untranslated.

Mūrī autem hāc fere fōrmā sunt:

Now this is usually the form of their walls.

248. Coniūctiōnēs causālēs : Causal Conjunctions.

(Denoting cause)

nam, enim (postpositive) : **for**
namque, etenim (stronger than **nam**): { *for indeed*
and in fact

Nam rēx iussit,
 Rēx enim iussit.

249. Coniūctiōnēs conclusīvae. Illative Conjunctions

(Denoting inference)

igitur (usually postpositive) } *therefore*
ergō, itaque, proinde }

USES**1. Ergō and igitur introduce a logical conclusion:**

Nihil est praestantius Deō. Ab eō igitur necesse est mundum regī... Omnem ergō regit ipse nātūrā... Ergō utrum ignōrant,... an vim nōn habent...? *Nothing is more excellent than God. The world, then, must be governed by him.... Therefore he rules all nature himself.... Consequently, do the gods not know.... or are they without power...?*

2. Itaque introduces an actual result following from circumstances:

Nēmō ausus est liber Phōciōnem sepelire. Itaque ā servīs sepultus est. *No free man dared to bury Phocion; and so he was buried by slaves.*

3. Proinde introduces a command or an exhortation:

Proinde tē parā, *Hence, prepare yourself!*
 Proinde quiēscant, *Let them, therefore, be quiet!*

Note: a. Ergō, igitur, itaque, proinde are not joined to any other coordinate conjunction:

Itaque = { ¹ *therefore*
² **and** *therefore*

b. Ergō and igitur often resume an interrupted thought:

Dīcō igitur prōvidentiā deōrum mundum administrārī: *I affirm, then, that the universe is governed by the providence of the gods.*

Note: “**Therefore**” may also be expressed by
adverbial phrases or adverbs:

Usually at the beginning

At any place

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| Ob eam rem (causam) | Quam of rem | Ideō | (quod, ut) |
| hanc ob rem (causam) | quōcircā | idcircō | (quod, ut) |
| eā dē rē (causā) | quāpropter | propterea | (quod, ut) |

Note: Ob **eam** rem etc. refer to something preceding or following (128),

quam ob rem etc. to something preceding,

ideō etc. to something following.

250. Combinations of Conjunctions

et - et { both - and
 - as well as

neque - neque } neither - nor
nec - nec }

neque aut - aut } and neither - nor
et neque - neque }

nēmō..... { neque - neque no one..... neither - nor
 aut - aut

neque — et { on the one hand not
 --- and on the other hand

et — neque { on the one hand — and
 on the other hand not

cum - tum both—and especially

tum - tum } now - now

modo - modo } sometimes - sometimes

nōn solum } sed etiam not only - but also

nōn modo } or vērū etiam

nōn modo } sed I won't say....., but
or nōn dicam }

Note: nōn modo or } sed nē - quidem,
 nōn modo nōn }

= not only **not**, but not even....., when both members have the same predicate: Nōn modo extrā tēctum, sed nē extrā lectum quidem vidēbātur.

aut - aut (246) **either - or**

vel - vel (sīve - sīve) either - or

251. CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE INDICATIVE.

| FINAL | |
|-------------|---|
| CONSECUTIVE | |
| TEMPORAL | <p>ut, ubi, simulatque (when den. a single action of the past.) } as soon as }</p> <p>postquam (Single action) after } Perfect</p> <p>antequam, priusquam } before }</p> <p>(Denoting time only) } Pres., Pf., 2d. F.</p> <p>dum, donec, quoad } until }</p> <p>(denoting time only) } All tenses</p> <p>dum, donec, quoad } as long as }</p> <p>= quam diu (adv.): den. time only } All tenses</p> <p>cum (denoting time only): when }</p> <p>dum (d. present or past actions) while : Present</p> |
| CONCESSIVE | <p>etiāmsī, etsī, tametsī } although</p> <p>quamquam }</p> |
| COMPARATIVE | <p>ut, sicut as</p> <p>quam than</p> |
| CONDITIONAL | <p>Sī mentīris peccās If you lie, (whether you do so (Sī mentītus es, peccāvistī; or not,) you sin</p> <p>sī mentiēris, peccābis</p> <p>Sī nōn (negating a word) } if not</p> <p>Nisi (negating the whole condition) }</p> |
| CAUSAL | <p>quod (denoting actual cause) because (often = quia)</p> <p>quoniam, si quidem, quandoquidem } since indeed</p> <p>(denoting actual cause known to all) }</p> |

CONJUNCTIONS GOVERNING THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| ut nē quō quōminus | } Denoting purpose . (Before comparatives) (After impeding) | (in order) that , (in order) to (in order) that not, not to, lest that the = ut eō (hinder) from , that not = ut eō minus |
|---|--|---|

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| ut ut nōn quīn | } Denoting result Only after a leading clause { with negative meaning | (so) that (so) that not (so) that not = ut nōn who not , that not = quī nōn quae nōn |
|---|--|---|

antequam, priusquam } **before:** Pres., Impf., Plupf.
(Denoting time and purpose)

dum, donec, quoad } **until:** Pres., Impf.
(Denoting time and purpose)

cum (narrātivum) } **when** - Impf., Plupf.
(Den. time and circumstances)

cum (concessivum et adversativum) **although, whereas, while**
etiamsi quamvis **even if, although**
licet **although:** Pres., Perf.
ut, **granted that**
ut nōn, nē **granted that not, even if not**

quasi, tamquam, ac si, ut si } **as if, just as if,** { Tenses acc. to
velut si, tamquam si, proinde quasi } { Sequence of tenses

Si mentiāris, peccēs If you **should lie**, (let me suppose you
(Si mentitus sis, peccāveris) **you would sin;** [will),

Si mentīrēris, peccārēs If you **lied** (but you will not),

(Si mentitus essēs, peccāvissēs) **you would sin;**

dum modo, dum, modo provided, if only

dum modo ne, dum ne, modo ne if only not, provided only not

cum (denoting cause) **since**

quod, quoniam, (denoting the cause
not as the author's, but another's
opinion) } **because, since indeed...**

252. INTERIECTIONES : INTERJECTIONS

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Joy</i> | : iō! eueo! o! | <i>hurra! huzza! o!</i> |
| <i>Sorrow</i> | : heu! cheu! prō! vae! | <i>alas! ah me! woe!</i> |
| <i>Astonishment</i> | : ēn! ecce! prō! hem! | <i>lo! behold! o! hem!</i> |
| <i>Disgust</i> | : prō! apage! | <i>fie! begone!</i> |
| <i>Praise</i> | : ēia! euge! | <i>bravo! well done!</i> |
| <i>Calling</i> | : heus! ohē! o! | <i>hey! ho!</i> |
| <i>Asseveration</i> | { nē! | <i>truly!</i> |
| | { mē dīus fidius (i. e. iuvet!) | <i>by the God of truth!</i> |
| | { (mē) hercule! | <i>in truth! by Hercules!</i> |
| | { ēdepol! ēcastor! | <i>by Pollux! by Castor!</i> |

253. FORMATION OF WORDS

New words are formed by

Derivation, (adding of suffixes to the stems of words)
and **Composition**, (linking one word or its stem to another);
Hence there are:

Primitīva, Primitives and **Dērīvātīva**, Derivatives
Simplicia, Simple words and **Composita**, Compounds

I. DERIVATIVES**254. Substantives derived from Verbs**

| | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|---|--|
| tor, trīx (fem.) sor | } the agent | victor, victrīx dēfēnsor | <i>conqueror</i> <i>defender</i> |
| or | | clāmor dolor | <i>shout</i> <i>pain</i> |
| tiō siō | { action as | mōtiō obsessiō | <i>a moving</i> <i>blockade</i> |
| us (gen. ūs) | | mōtūs | <i>a moving</i> |
| men mentum bulum culum ulum crum trum | { means or instrument | nōmen ornāmentum vocābulum gubernāculum iaculum sepulcrum arātrum | <i>name</i> <i>ornament</i> <i>vocable</i> <i>helm</i> <i>javelin</i> <i>grave</i> <i>plough</i> |

255. Substantives derived from Substantives

| | | | |
|--------------|---|-------------|-----------------------------|
| culus, a, um | Dēminūtiva Deminutives (usually following the gender of the primitive) | flosculus | <i>floweret</i> |
| ulus, a, um | | particula | <i>particle</i> |
| olus, a, um | | opusculum | <i>little work</i> |
| ellus, a, um | | puerulus | <i>little boy</i> |
| illus, a, um | | filiolus | <i>little son</i> |
| | | ocellus | <i>little eye</i> |
| | | lapillus | <i>little stone, pebble</i> |
| idēs | Patronymica Greek noun of descent or relationship | Priamidēs | <i>Son of Priam</i> |
| īdēs | | Atrīdēs | <i>Son of Atreus</i> |
| adēs | | Aenēadēs | <i>Son of Aeneas</i> |
| ēis | | Nērēis | <i>Daughter of Nereus</i> |
| īs | | Atlantis | <i>Daughter of Atlas</i> |
| ias | | Thaumantias | <i>Daughter of Thaumias</i> |
| | | | |
| ārium | Place where things (plants, animals...) are kept | aerārium | <i>treasury</i> |
| ētum | | sēminārium | <i>seminary</i> |
| īle | | quercētum | <i>oak grove</i> |
| | | ovīle | <i>sheepfold</i> |

| | | | |
|------|---------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| īna | Art or (its) place | medicīna | <i>art of healing</i> |
| | | officīna | <i>workshop</i> |
| | | piscīna | <i>fishpond</i> |
| ātus | Office | cōsulātus | <i>consulate</i> |

256. Substantives derived from Adjectives

| | | | |
|------|----------------|-----------|-------------------|
| tās | Quality | pietās | <i>piety</i> |
| tūdō | | fortitūdō | <i>bravery</i> |
| ia | | audācia | <i>boldness</i> |
| itia | | amicitia | <i>friendship</i> |

257. Adjectives derived from Verbs

| | | | |
|--------|---|------------|-----------------------|
| bundus | Meaning of present participle increased | moribundus | <i>dying</i> |
| | | furibundus | <i>raging</i> |
| cundus | Inclination | īrācundus | <i>wrathful</i> |
| āx | | mendāx | <i>given to lying</i> |
| ulus | | crēdulus | <i>credulous</i> |

| | | | |
|-------|--------------------------------------|---------|---------|
| idus | Quality | calidus | warm |
| ilis | } Capacity (with passive meaning) | docilis | docile |
| bilis | | mōbilis | movable |

258. Adjectives derived from Common Nouns

| | | | |
|--------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| eus | Material | aureus | golden |
| ius | } Belonging to | patrius(amor) | fatherly |
| icius | | patricius | patrician |
| icus | | bellicus | warlike |
| ālis | | rēgālis | regal |
| ēlis | | crūdēlis | cruel |
| īlis | | puerīlis | boyish |
| āris | | populāris | popular |
| ēnsis | | castrēnsis | camp- |
| ester | | campester | field- |
| ānus | | urbānus | city- |
| īnus | | dīvīnus | divine |
| nus | | paternus(ager) | fatherly |
| īvus | | aestīvus | summer |
| timus | | maritimus | sea- |
| ōsus | } Fulness | artificiōsus | artistic |
| lentus | | vīnolentus | drunk with wine |
| tus | Supplied with | { barbātus | bearded |
| | | { aurītus | having ears |

259. Adjectives derived from Proper Nouns

| | | | |
|----------|--------------------|------------|------------|
| ānus | } Names of Persons | Sullānus | of Sulla |
| īnus | | Verrīnus | of Verres |
| ēus(īus) | | Epicurēus | Epicurean |
| icus | | Homēricus | Homeric |
| icus | } Names of Nations | Germānicus | German |
| ius | | Thrācius | Thracian |
| ānus | } Names of Places | Thebānus | Theban |
| īnus | | Amerīnus | of Ameria |
| ās | | Arpīnās | of Arpinum |
| ius | | Corinthius | Corinthian |
| aeus | | Smyrnaeus | of Smyrna |
| ēnsis | | Cannēnsis | of Cannae |

260. Adjectives derived from Adjectives

| | | | |
|-----|------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| lus | Dēminūtīva | { misellus parvulus | wretched little |
|-----|------------|------------------------|--------------------|

261. Adjectives derived from Adverbs

| | | | |
|--------|---------------|------------|--------------|
| ernus | { Relating to | hodiernus | of to-day |
| ternus | | hesternus | of yesterday |
| tinus | | crāstinus | of to-morrow |
| tīnus | | intestīnus | internal |

262. Verbs derived from Verbs

| | | | |
|--------|--|--------------|-----------------|
| scere | Incohātīva: | obdormiscere | fall asleep |
| āre | { Frequentātīva and Intēnsīva: repeti- tion or intensity; usu. from pf. part. | cantāre | sing |
| itāre | | cantitāre | sing repeatedly |
| sāre | | cursāre | { run hither |
| sitāre | | cursitāre | { and thither |
| urīre | Dēsiderātīva: | ēsurīre | desire to eat |

263. Verbs derived from Nouns

| | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| āre | Usu. transitive | { vulnerāre exsulāre (intr.) | wound live in exile |
| ēre | Only intransitive: | flōrēre (intr.) | bloom |
| īre | { Trans. and intrans. | { saevīre (intr.) | rage |
| ere | | { metuere | fear |

264. Adverbs derived from Verbs

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| certātīm | emulously | cursīm | speedily |
| separātīm | separately | praesertīm | especially |
| stātīm | instantly | raptīm | hurriedly |
| caesīm | by cuts | sēnsīm | gradually |

265. Adverbs derived from Nouns

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|------------|------------|
| nōminātīm | expressly; by name | antīquitus | of old |
| gradātīm | step by step | funditus | utterly |
| virītīm | man by man | rādīcitus | radically |
| furtīm | by stealth | penitus | thoroughly |

II. COMPOUND WORDS

266. Compound Substantives

| | | | |
|--|---|--------------------------|------------------|
| Two nouns, the second one with the form of a verbal stem | } | naufragrium | <i>shipwreck</i> |
| túbicen | | <i>trumpeter</i> | |
| signifer | | <i>standard - bearer</i> | |

| | | | |
|-----------|---|-----------|-----------------------------|
| Two nouns | : | triennium | <i>space of three years</i> |
|-----------|---|-----------|-----------------------------|

| | | | |
|----------------------|---|----------|-----------------|
| Preposition and Noun | } | dēdecus | <i>disgrace</i> |
| | | interrēx | <i>interrex</i> |

| | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|---|------------------|
| Note: Rēs pūblica, | <i>republic, state</i> | } | are no compounds |
| iūs iūrandum, | <i>oath</i> | | |
| senātūs cōsultum, | <i>decree of the senate</i> | | |

267. Compound Adjectives

| | | | |
|--|---|-----------|----------------------|
| Two nouns, second one with verbal stem | } | mortifer | <i>death-dealing</i> |
| | | particeps | <i>sharing</i> |

| | | |
|-----------|------------|---------------------|
| Two nouns | magnanimus | <i>great-souled</i> |
|-----------|------------|---------------------|

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------|------------------|
| Preposition and Noun, | āmēns | <i>senseless</i> |
|-----------------------|-------|------------------|

| | | |
|---------------------------|--------|----------------|
| or other particle and N.: | dēmēns | <i>foolish</i> |
|---------------------------|--------|----------------|

| | | |
|------------------------|----------|------------------------------|
| 1. ā, dē, dis, ex, in, | sōcors | <i>dull</i> |
| nec, sē, sō, vē | vēcors | <i>without understanding</i> |
| denoting "not" | indignus | <i>unworthy</i> |

| | | | |
|--------------------------|---|-------------|-----------------------|
| 2, sub = somewhat | } | subobscūrus | <i>rather obscure</i> |
| | | subnūbilus | <i>rather cloudy</i> |

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---|------------|--------------------|
| 3. per, prae = very | } | permagnus | <i>very great</i> |
| | | praeclārus | <i>very famous</i> |

| | | |
|------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| Adverb and Verb: | benevolus | <i>benevolent</i> |
|------------------|-----------|-------------------|

268. Compound Verbs

| | | |
|-----------------------|------------|--------------|
| Substantive and Verb: | aedificāre | <i>build</i> |
|-----------------------|------------|--------------|

| | | |
|---------------------|-------------|----------------|
| Adjective and Verb: | amplificāre | <i>enlarge</i> |
|---------------------|-------------|----------------|

| | | |
|----------------|------------|------------------|
| Verb and Verb: | calefacere | <i>make warm</i> |
|----------------|------------|------------------|

| | | |
|------------------|------------|---------------------|
| Adverb and Verb: | maledīcere | <i>speak ill of</i> |
|------------------|------------|---------------------|

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|------------|-------------------------------|
| Preposition and Verb: | { | abdere | <i>put away, hide</i> |
| ā, ab, abs, as = away | { | absterrere | <i>frighten away</i> |
| | { | asportare | <i>carry away</i> |
| ō, ob, obs, os | { | againt | |
| | { | towards | |
| | { | obrēpere | <i>approach towards</i> |
| | { | offerre | <i>offer</i> |
| | { | ostendere | <i>show</i> |
| com, con, cō | { | together | |
| | { | strongly | |
| | { | cōferre | <i>carry together</i> |
| | { | cognōscere | <i>learn to know thoro'ly</i> |
| dē | { | down | |
| | { | completely | |
| | { | dēicere | <i>throw down</i> |
| | { | dēvincere | <i>conquer completely</i> |
| Inseparable Particle and Verb: | { | ambire | <i>go around</i> |
| amb, am | { | ambūrere | <i>burn around</i> |
| = around | { | amplecti | <i>embrace</i> |
| | { | amputare | <i>cut around, cut off</i> |
| au | { | away | |
| | { | aufugere | <i>flee away</i> |
| dis, dī, dir | { | apart | |
| | { | asunder | |
| | { | dīrimere | <i>part</i> |
| | { | dissolvere | <i>dissolve</i> |
| sē | { | = apart | |
| | { | sēcernere | <i>distinguish</i> |

Note: **Phonetic changes** occurring in the composition of words appear especially in the composition of verbs; e. g.:

Assimilation of consonants: āggredī from adgredī

Elision of consonants: trādere from trānsdere

Contraction of vowels: cōgere from coagere

Weakening of vowels : {

conclūdere from conclaudere

concidere from concaedere

conicere from coniacere

269.

COMPOUND ADVERBS

| | | | |
|---------------|---|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| comminus | = | con manus | <i>in close contest</i> |
| forsitan | = | fors sit an | <i>perhaps</i> |
| hodiē | = | hōc diē | <i>to-day</i> |
| īlicō | = | in locō | <i>instantly</i> |
| intereā | = | inter eā | <i>meanwhile</i> |
| nūdiustertius | = | nunc diēs tertius | <i>the day before yesterday</i> |
| profectō | = | prō factō | <i>actually, by all means</i> |
| scīlicet | = | scī(re) licet | <i>evidently, of course</i> |

Note: The meaning of place denoted by locō and eā (163) is changed into a meaning of time in īlicō and intereā.

270.

Appendix

1. Corresponding transitive and intransitive verbs

| Transitive | Intransitive | Transitive | Intransitive |
|------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------------------|
| excitāre | expergīscī | caedere | cadere |
| fugāre | fugere | occidere | occidere |
| augēre | accrēscere | calefacere | calēre |
| minuere | dēcrēscere | obstupefacere | stupēre |
| accendere | ardēre | patefacere | patēre |
| combūrere | cōnflāgrāre | assuēfacere | { assuēvisse { (assuēscere) |
| iacere | iacēre | cōstituere | { stāre { (cōsistere) |
| cōgere | convenīre | | |
| suspendere | pendēre | | |

2. English and Latin words of similar sound

| | | |
|-----------------|------------|-------------------------------------|
| convince | persuādēre | convincere, <i>convict</i> |
| digest, | concoquere | dīgerere, <i>arrange</i> |
| discuss, | disputāre | discutere, <i>dispel</i> |
| suspect, | sūspicāre | sūspicere, <i>look up to</i> |

3. Latin Reflexives

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| sē cōferre, | <i>go</i> | sē mergere, | <i>dive</i> |
| sē efferre, | <i>become haughty</i> | sē recipere, | <i>retreat</i> |
| sē iungere, | <i>join</i> | sē subducere, | <i>withdraw</i> |

4. Similar Latin forms

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| edere | ēdere | fissus | fīsus |
| pōssidere | possidēre | cēpī | coepī |
| cōndimus | condīmus | ābscidī | abscīdī |
| vīncimus | vincīmus | rētultit | rētultit |
| prōdimus | prōdīmus | victūrus | vīctūrus |
| āddimus | adīmus | paritūrus | pāritūrus |
| rēddimus | redīmus | quaéris | quéreris |
| vēnīmus | vēnīmus | ēducō | ēducō |
| vēnimus | vēniimus | appellō, serō | appellō, serō |
| opertus | oppertus | fundō, mandō | fundō, mandō |
| oblītus | oblītus | cōnsternō | cōnsternō |

Principal Rules of Syntax

(A *Complete Grammar* will be issued in a separate volume.)

271. AGREEMENT OF THE PREDICATE

1. With one subject

The predicate agrees with its subject

- a. In **number** { *Nōn is sum quī terrear*
and **person** { *nōn iī estis quī terreāmini*
- b. In **gender** { *Usus (tempus) est magister*
and **case,** { *Vita est magistra*
(if possible) { *Invidia glōriae assidua comes est*
 { *Athēnae doctrinārum inventricēs sunt*

272. With two or more subjects

- a. If **all** the subjects (asyndeton or joined by **et**, - **que** or **atque**) are **living** beings and **precede** their predicate, it usually agrees with all subjects conjointly:

It is **plural** in number: *Pater et frāter mortuī sunt.*

prefers the 1st person : *Ego et pater tuus (tū) valēmus*

the 2d person : *Tū et mater tua valētis*

prefers the **m. gender** : { *Māter et soror mortuae sunt.*
 { *Pater et māter mortuī sunt.*

- b. In all other cases the predicate usually agrees with the nearest subject:

Et tū et illi sciunt.

Mortua est māter et pater.

Pater mortuus est et māter.

Impedimenta et equitatus secūtus est.

Ignis et aēr facillimē pellitur.

But also: *Aēr, ignis, aqua, terra eī pārent.*

273. Agreement of substantive and adjective modifiers of subject or object added to the predicate.

Personal substantives denoting **age** or **office**, and adjectives (participles) expressing **state** or **order** agree when used predicatively, in gender, number and case, with their nouns:

- a. *Cicerō id puer, senex, cōsul.... fēcit*

.... **when** a boy, **in** his old age, **as** a consul....

- b. *Tē vīvum cōmbūrere cōnātī sunt,*

They tried to burn you alive.

3. **Praising** and blaming attributes, except surnames, are added by means of *ille* or of appellatives:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Opulentissima illa Corinthus | } <i>rich Corinth</i> |
| Corinthus, urbs opulentissima | |
| fortissimus ille Hannibal | (<i>the</i>) <i>brave Hannibal</i> |
| But: Alexander Magnus | <i>Alexander the Great</i> |

4. **Attributes with prepositions** are, in general, replaced by genitives or adjectives; when used, they are commonly added by connectives.

| | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| a. trānsitus Alpium | <i>march across the Alps</i> |
| bellum Germānōrum | <i>war against(w.) the Germans</i> |
| bellum Gallicum | <i>war with Gaul</i> |

- b. pugna ad Marathōnem **facta** (connective a participle)
nōbilis illa ad Cannās pugna (connective another attrib.)
 īnsula, **quae est** contra Massiliam (connective a relative.)

- c. cum dignitatē ōtium *honorable leisure*
 homō sine honōre *a man without honor*
 signa ex aere *statues of brass*
 liber dē ducibus *book about generals*
 reditus in patriam *return to one's native place*

5. Appositives to possessive pronouns are put in the genitive and inserted:

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| tuum discipulī officium | <i>your duty as a pupil</i> |
| tuum ipsius officium | <i>your own duty</i> |

277. AGREEMENT OF PRONOUNS

Determinatives, (demonstratives) and relatives agree with their **antecedents** in gender and number; their case depends upon their relation in the clauses to which they belong:

- a. Magna vīs est in virtūtibus; eās excitā, sī dormiunt.
 Virtūtēs **quārum** vīs est magna excitandae sunt.
 Flūmen **quod** vocāmus Rhēnum altissimum est.
- b. Petō ut eum diligās; erit **id** mihi grātum.
 Sapientius secundam quam adversam fortūnam tulit,
 (**id**) **quod** difficiliter putātur.

278. However, determinatives, interrogatives and relatives (as subjects or accusative objects) always agree with the predicate appellative to which they refer:

Is est honor**That** is honor**Eum** dicō honōrem**That** I call honor**Quem** dicimus **honōrem**, sī iste nōn est?Belgae **quam** tertiam esse **partem** Galliae dixerāmus,...N., **quī** est vicus, **quae** est urbs, **quod** est oppidumBut: **Quid** (predicate) est honor?*What is (the definition) of honor?**Note:* Relatives and determinatives sometimes agree with the appositives of their antecedents:

Flūmen Rhēnus, quī or quod.....:

eum or id trānsiērunt.

279. Cōstructiō ad sēnsu:

Senātus populusque Rōmānus (i. e. rēs pūbl. R.) dēcrēvit.

Pars, multitudō, mīlia (i. e. multī) **caesī sunt**.

Rēx et clāssis (i. e. clāssiārīi) profectī sunt.

Aēr et ignis et aqua et terra **prīma** (i. e. initia) **sunt**.Libera cīvītās et rēx (i. e. haec) inimīca inter sē **sunt**.*Note:* Predicates usually agree with appositives of city (and river) names, and with predicate substantives, when nearer to them than to the subject:Corinthus, tōtīus Graeciae **lūmen**, exstīnctum est.

Nōn omnis error stultitia dicēda est;

or: nōn omnis error dicēdus est stultitia.

280.**THE NOMINATIVE****1.** Every **subject** expressed by a noun (9) is put in the nominative: **Deus** est, *God exists**Notes:* a. In every verbum finitum (169) the subject is expressed by the personal ending (176):

Caesar vēn - ī

Venī - tō

Venia - t

I, Caesar, came**You** shall come**He** shall come**b.** The indefinite subject "*they, people, one etc.*" is rendered by the passive, the 3d and 1st pl. and quis:

Laudor, laudāris.....

People praise me:.....

itur, itum est.....

they go, went.....

dicunt, trādunt, ferunt

it is said, related.....

sī quis dicat, dicit.....

if one should say.....*Also:* dicās (dixeris)**every one** would say

dicerēs, putārēs

one would have said....

2. Every **predicate noun** takes the nominative:

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sum, fīō, maneō | } <i>I am, become, remain,</i> |
| videor, beātus | |
| Appellor, habeor | } <i>I am called, regarded</i> |
| putor iustus | |

Note: The **predicate noun** is also called the **subjective complement**.

281. **Esse**, when used as a complete or independent verb, means **exist, feel, be**, and may be modified by adverbs:

Fuit (*he lived*) ante Rōmam conditam

Sic est = sic sē rēs habet, so *it is*

Mihi melius est (*feel*) Praesto es, *be at hand*

282. THE ACCUSATIVE

Transitive verbs (so called, because their action usually passes over—trānsit—from the subject to an object) have an **object accusative** which becomes subject nominative in the passive (205, Note):

Active : Domum incendit

Passive: Domus ab eō incēnsa est

283. OBJECT ACCUSATIVE

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. Adiuvō, effugiō tē | <i>I help you, escape you</i> |
| imitor, sequor te | <i>I imitate, follow you</i> |
| adeō tē supplex | <i>I approach you humbly</i> |
| adeō terram, periculum | <i>I visit....., undergo.....</i> |
| conveniō tē | <i>I visit, meet you</i> |
| vōx, vīrēs mē dēficiunt | <i>my voice, my strength gives out</i> |

2. Verbs compounded with **circum, praeter, trāns**:
- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| castra circumīre | <i>march around, surround</i> |
|------------------|-------------------------------|

3. Verbs denoting (painful) Emotion:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| dolēre, maerēre rem , rē | <i>grieve at, mourn over</i> |
| lūgēre, lamentārī rem , dē.. | <i>bewail, weep over</i> |
| querī, horrērē rem , dē... | <i>complain of, shudder at</i> |
| dēspērāre rēi, rem , dē... | <i>despair of</i> |
| also rīdēre, mīrārī rem | <i>laugh at, wonder at</i> |
| But: gaudēre, laetārī rē | <i>be glad of, rejoice in</i> |
| exultāre, glōriārī rē | <i>exult over, glory in</i> |

4. Neuter pronouns and (numeral) adjectives as objects:

- a. Multum **possum, valeō** *I have great power, influence*
 illud (dē eā rē) **dubitō** *I doubt about that*
 hōc (hāc rē) **gaudeō** *I am glad of this*
 id ūnum, nihil aliud } **studeo** *this is my only aim*
 (nūllī aliī rēi)
- b. cētera tibi assentior *I agree with you on the other pts.*
 utrumque vōbīs persuadeō *I convince you of both.....*

5. Cognate accusative

- servitūtē servīre *serve as a slave*
 doctrīnam redolēre *savor of the school*

6. Attributive and adverbial accusative

- a. Id aetātis (eā aetate) fīlius *a son of that age*
 b. Id temporis (eō tempore) vēnit *he came at that time*
 multum esse in *be much engaged in*
 magnam partem *to a great extent*
 nihil, summum *not at all, at most*

7. Paenitet... (pg. 104), decet..., iuvat...(pg. 105)

TWO ACCUSATIVES

284. Object and Predicate Accusative

Taken by verbs of

- a: **showing** oneself, or **proving** as, b: **having** etc. as
 c: **regarding** as, d: **calling**, e: **making**

Active

Passive

- a. Virum, fortem tē praestā } *no passive*
 ignāvum. fortem sē praebuit } *praestāre requires a praising*
 fortiter, ignāvē sē **gessit** } *attribute, sē gerere, an adverb*
- b. Habeō tē amīcum } *no passive: see c.*
I have a friend in you
- dō, accipiō vōs obsidēs liberī datī sunt obsidēs
- c. Habeō tē **prō** amīcō } *habēris ā mē amīcus*
 (in) amīcī locō...(274, b) } *prō amīcō, in amīcīs*
- Caesarem bonum ducem Caesar bonus dux
 putō, dūcō, existimō..... putātur, existimātur.....
- d. Tē patrem appellō, vocō..... pater appellāris, vocāris....

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| e. Tē cōsulem facimus | cōsul fīs |
| Avaritia vītam miseram | avāritiā vita misera |
| reddīt | fit (Redditur = <i>given back</i>) |
| Numam rēgem dēligunt, creant | Numa rēx creātus est |

285. TWO OBJECT ACCUSATIVES

1. Verbs compounded with *trâns* denoting **transport** (*trădu-cere, traicere, trănsportăre*) may have a double accusative:

Active

Passive

Exercitum Axonam trādūxit exercitus Axonam trāductus est

2. Tē artem doceō (teach) $\begin{cases} \text{artem ā mē discēs} \\ \text{arte ā mē ērudīris} \end{cases}$

But

Tē dē rē {certiōrem faciō
or doceō (inform) dē rē {certior fīs ā mē
docēris ā mē

3. Tē rem or dē rē cēlō } dē clāde cēlāris, *the defeat*
(*keep in ignorance about*) } *is **concealed** from you*

4. Te rem (re) - poscō, flāgitō
a tē rem p., f., **demand** } pāx ā tē poscitur.....

5. Only with a neuter pronoun or num. adj. as 2d accus.:

Id nōs cōgit nātūra

Haec tē (ad) - moneō

dē hīs rēbus admonēris

Id tē ōrō (inter)- rogō, *ask* illud rogor

6. Tē **sententiam** rogō
(*I ask your official vote*) } p̄nceps **sententiam** rogāris

But

(Inter) rogō tē dē rē) (inter) rogāris dē..., quid....

Quaerō ā (ex, dē) tē, quid.... (*your private opinion...*)

286. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE

The *accūsātivus cum īnfīnītīvō* may be used either as subject or as object:

Deum esse cōstat

Rēx iubet tē abīre

Subject of constat

Object of iubet

It is certain that God exists The king wants you to go

Note: These accusatives (as Deum and tē) are considered as subjects, because, translated into English, they can be made subjects of clauses.

4. With *volō, nōlō, mālo, cupiō*,
 a. when the two verbs have different subjects:
volō eum hōc facere **I want him to do it**
volō hōc facere **I want to do it (myself)**
hōc factum volō } **I want this done**
 = *hōc fieri volō* }
- b. sometimes, when both verbs have the same subject,
 esp. with *esse* } *mē clēmentem esse cupiō*
 or an infin. passive } *sē amārī quam timērī māvult.*
 Also: *Volō, mālō ut.....*; *velim mihi dīcās, please tell me.*
- 5.. *Assuēfaciō tē pārere* *I accustom you to obey*
cōgō, prohibeō tē ire *I compel, prevent.....*
arguo, īnsimulō *I accuse*
 arguō tē hōc fēcisse
 But *accūsō tē, quod hōc fēciris*

289. Remarks:

Meaning of the Infinitive according to 171, Note:

- a. *Audiō tē dīcere* *I hear (that) you say*
Audiēbam tē dīcere *I heard you say (= that you said)*

Note: With *meminī* (= *memoriā teneō*) the pres. inf. denotes also previous action:

- meminī tē dīcere* *I remember that you said*
- b. *sciō tē dīxisse* *I know that you said*
scīvī tē dīxisse *I knew you had said*
- c. *sciō tē dīctūrum esse* *I know you will (are going to) say*
scīvī tē dīctūrum esse *I knew you would (were g. to) say*

Note: Instead of the future infinitive **fore ut** or **futūrum esse ut** (with the pres. and imperf. subj.) **may** be used; it **must** be used with verbs that have no participial stem:

- Sciō tē laudātum irī* = *sciō fore ut laudēris*
scīvī tē laudātum irī = *scīvī fore ut laudārēris*
 But only: *spērō fore ut dīscās*

290. Spērō, iūrō, minor, polliceor, cōnfidō Iubeō, vetō

A future action must be expressed by a **future** infinitive (*posse* and *velle* denote the future); *iubeō* and *vetō*, however, always take the present infinitive:

Spērō eam sūspciōnem falsam **esse**, *I hope = I wish*
 Spērō mē tibi causam probāvisse, *I hope = I think*
 Spērō mē hōc adeptūrum **esse**, *I hope*
 Dicit sē **posse, velle** alteram porticum aedificāre

Iubeō vetō eōs discēdere, addūcī

291. To avoid ambiguity, the infinitive passive is is often used:

“Dīcō tē eōs vincere posse” *is ambiguous*
 Dīcō eōs ā tē **vīncī** posse *excludes doubt*

292. The subject accusative is commonly not omitted; impersonal verbs cannot express it.

Iūrās **tē** id factūrum esse *you swear to do it*
 iūrat **sē** (refl.!) id fūrum *he swears to do it*
 videō pluere *I see it rain*

293. AGREEMENT

Nouns predicated of or compared with the subject accusative must agree with it, when the verb is the same:

Cōnstat mē prius hūc vēnisse quam tē, or : quam tū vēnistī
 ait mē idem facere quod illum, or : quod ille faciat

294. TRANSLATION OF THE A. c. ī.

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1. Audiō eum loquī | <i>I hear him speak</i> |
| Hannibalem ad Cannās | <i>We know (that) Hannibal</i> |
| vīcissee accēpimus | <i>was victorious at Cannae</i> |
| Deum esse cōnstat | <i>God's existence is certain</i> |
| dīcit sē scīre | <i>he affirms to know</i> |
| 2. Negō mē id fēcisse | <i>I affirm I did not do it</i> |
| nōlō, vetō id fierī | <i>I desire, command that....</i> |
| nōn putō (position!) | <i>I think that... not... [not...]</i> |
| appāret eum vīcissee | <i>he has evidently conquered</i> |

295. A. (c. ī.) IN EXCLAMATION

of surprise, indignation, regret...

| | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Mē miserum! | <i>O wretched me!</i> |
| tē (or tēne) hōc dīcere! | } <i>You to say this!</i> |
| = tū (or tūne) ut hōc dīcās! | |

296. NOMINATIVUS CUM INFINITIVO

Those verbs which take the A. c. ī in the active, usually require the N. c. ī. in the passive, especially :

1. **Videor** hōc facere
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I am **seen** doing this} \\ \text{I **seem** to do this} \\ \text{It **appears** as though...} \end{array} \right.$

vidētur sibi beātus (esse) *he believes himself happy*
vidēmur (nōbīs) hōc *we flatter ourselves with*
bene fēcisse *having done this well*
2. Fertur, trāditur, feruntur, trāduntur (3d pers.):
Poēta caecus fuisse trāditur.
Trāditum est poētam caecum fuisse.
3. **Iubeor, vector, sinor; putor, existimor, dīcor:**
Iussī sunt, vētītī sunt abīre

Note: The A. c. ī is used with :

Mihi dīcitur, vērē, rēctē, nōn sine causā dīcitur;
dīcendum est, dictum est, dīcī potest; trāditum est;
Dīceris dēceptus esse.
But: Rēctē dīcitur tē dēceptum esse.

297. THE GENITIVE

1. Amor patris
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{love **of** one's father : pater amat : subject} \\ \text{love **for** one's father : patrem amat : object} \end{array} \right.$
2. Hōrum virtūs minor est quam māiōrum *than **that** of.....*
3. Meī, tuī, similis *similar to me, to you*
patris simillimus *the very picture of his father*
patrī similis *similar to his father*
4. Nōmen carendī *the word "to want"*
ēius causā (grātiā) *for his sake*
mēā, suā causā *for my, his (refl.) sake*
5. Satis, parum labōris *enough, too little exertion*
id labōris = is labor *this degree of exertion*
multum damnī
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\}$

magnum damnum
 $\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\}$
 much harm
aliquid novī or novum *something new*
nihil ūtile, quid aliud? *nothing useful, what else?*

12. Remind, remember, forget

Admoneō, commoneō tē dē rē, reī, id } **remind** (tr.)
 But commonefaciō tē reī, id }

Memini, reminiscor tuī, rem, reī, id } **remember** (i.)
 But recordor dē tē, rem, reī, id }

Obliviscor tuī, rem, reī, id = **forget** (i.)

Note: Memini **eum**, *I remember him yet (I knew him)*

Memini **ēius**, *I remember (think of) him now*

Tuī mihi **in mentem venit** = Tuī memini

Multa (nom.) mihi in mentem veniunt

298.

THE DATIVE

- Nōn **tibi** sōlī nātus es ...**for yourself alone**
tibi bellum faciō, īferō *I begin war **against** you*
rēs **mihi** ūtilis, id ōnea, } ...*useful to me for...*
apta, necessariā est **ad** hōc }

Quid sibi hōc vult? *What is the meaning of this?*
Quid tibi vīs, īnsāne? *What do you aim at, madman?*
- Medeor, **persuādeō**; *heal, convince (persuade)*
nūbō (pg. 91), parcō, studeō, *marry, spare, take pains*
male dīcō, supplicō, *speak ill of, beg humbly*
obtrectō and **invidēō** *work against, envy*

Tibi, eī invidētur *you, he is envied*
eius glōriāe invidētur *they envy (him) his glory*
mihi persuāsī } *I am convinced*
mihi persuāsum est }
sibi persuāsīt } *he is convinced*
eī persuāsīm est }
tibi persuādē *be convinced*
hīs persuādērī nōn potest *they cannot be persuaded*
- Adsum** opem ferō } *I help you*
auxīlior, succurrō etc. tibi }
But iuvō, adiuvō tē }
Hōc tibi auferō, **adimō**, } *I take this away from you*
ēripiō, dētrahō etc. }
Tibi dictō audiēns sum *I obey you promptly*

| | |
|---|---|
| 4. Is tibi succēdit fīnibus appropinquāmus imperant omnibus gentibus praeficiō tē exercitū tuīs rēbus timeō tibi timeō, prōvideō mihi crēde (Position!) | <i>He is your successor we draw near the boundary they rule over all nations I place you in command of... I fear for your interests I fear for, take care of you trust me</i> |
| 5. Dōnō { tibi pecūniam { tē pecūniā Circumdō { urbī mūrū { urbem mūrō | <i>I give you money I present you with money I put a wall around the city I surround the city with...</i> |
| 6. Est mihi liber } habeō librum } ēius est liber, meus est But in patre prūdētia est } pater summā p' ā est } | <i>I have a book he owns, I own a book the father has great prudence (Qualities require in.)</i> |
| Mihi Caesar nōmen est } mihi Caesarī nōmen est } | <i>my name is Caesar (= Caesar appellor)</i> |

7. Dative of Abstract Substantives

a) with **esse** and **dare**, expressing **effect**,

(often accompanied by a second dative answering the question "For whom?")

| | |
|--|--|
| Nāvis magnō ūsuī erat id magnō argumentō est id mihi praesidiō est tua salūs mihi cūrae est cuī bonō ? | <i>The ship was very useful it serves as a striking proof it affords me protection { your welfare is a care to me { I take an interest in your welf. to whose advantage is it ?</i> |
| Id tibi laudī, vitiō dō id tibi crīminī dō, vertō id tibi ignāviae dō, dūcō | <i>I praise, blame you for it I reproach you with it I impute it to you as cowardice</i> |

b) with **mittere**, **relinquere**, **venire**, expressing **purpose**:

| | |
|---|---|
| Atticīs auxiliō vēnit tibi eās subsidiō mittō colloquiō diem dīcō receptū canō | <i>he came to the aid of... I send them to your relief I set a day for the conference I sound a retreat</i> |
|---|---|

299. **Purpose** usually is expressed by

ad, causā, ut, quī, dē, the supine in um:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a. Ad pācem hortor | <i>I exhort to peace</i> |
| ad perseverandū inflammō | <i>I rouse to perseverance</i> |
| pecūniam dō | <i>I give money</i> |
| ad emendās sententiās | <i>to buy votes</i> |
| b. Reī publicae causā, grātiā | <i>for the interest of the state</i> |
| animī causā | <i>for the sake of amusement</i> |
| agendī causā | <i>for the sake of acting</i> |
| ingeniī acuendī causā | <i>to sharpen the intellect</i> |
| suī liberandī causa | <i>to free themselves</i> |
| c. Adducō tē ut abeās | <i>I induce you to go</i> |
| d. Lēgātōs mīserunt quī | <i>they sent legates to accuse</i> |
| eum absentem accūsarent | <i>him in his absence</i> |
| e. Lēgātōs dē pāce mitto | <i>...to treat about peace</i> |
| f. Cubitum eō | <i>I go to bed</i> |

THE ABLATIVE

300. The **ablātīvus sēparātīvus with ab** is required by
sē - and dis -, the **transitive abstinēre, protect,**
abhor, deter, and liberāre ab homine:

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Sēiungō ab, sēparō ab | <i>separate from</i> |
| discēdō ab or ex urbe | <i>leave the city</i> |
| manūs ā scelere abstineō | <i>keep my hands from...</i> |
| dēfendō, prohibeō, tueor | |
| tē ab iniuriā | <i>protect you against...</i> |
| iniūriam ā tē | <i>ward it off from you</i> |
| abhorreō ab istō scelere | <i>shudder at this crime</i> |
| id abhorret ā meis mōribus | <i>is remote, differs from...</i> |
| dēterreō tē ā prōpositō | <i>deter you from your plan</i> |

301. All other verbs of separation may take the **bare**
 ablative:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Liberāre metū, periculō | <i>free from fear, from danger</i> |
| nūdāre mūrum dēfensōribus | <i>strip the wall of defenders</i> |
| vacāre culpā, metū, dolore | <i>be free from guilt, fear...</i> |
| But huic ūnī negōtiō vacō | <i>devote myself to...</i> |
| carēre amicis, patriā | <i>have no..., must do without...</i> |
| abstinēre, supersedēre proeliō | <i>refrain from, avoid</i> |
| (ē) vitā, patriā cedere | <i>die, leave the country</i> |
| (ē) castris cōpiās edūcere | <i>lead the troops out of.....</i> |
| (ab) iniuriā (sē) abstinēre | <i>refrain from wrong</i> |

302. With comparatives the **ablātīvus comparātiōnis** may be used instead of *quam* with any nominative or accusative, if no ambiguity arises; in sentences with negative meaning it is preferred to *quam*; with relatives it is employed exclusively:

Patre = **quam pater** or **quam patrem**

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. Filius māior patre est | <i>The son is greater than the fa.</i> |
| sciō eum māiōrem patre esse | <i>I know that he is gr. than...</i> |
| 2. Lacrimā nihil citius arēscit | { <i>Nothing dries more quickly than a tear</i> |
| 3. Amīcitiā quā nihil | |
| melius habēmus | <i>Friendship, than which we have nothing better</i> |
| Melle dulcior, lūce clārior | <i>honey - sweet, clear as light</i> |
| Opīniōne celerius = | { <i>faster than one would think</i> |
| celerius quam opīniō fuit | |
| Aequō plūs = | { <i>more than is fair</i> |
| plūs quam pār est | |

Note: Similarly: *spē*, *expectātiōne*, *solitō*, *necessāriō*.

303. Plūs, amplius, longius, more than, and minus, less than, are often inserted before words of number or measure without change of construction:

Plūs annum (321) in urbe est ... **more than** a year

Note: With *annōs nātus māior* and *minor* are often used:

Puer māior (minor) decem annōs nātus (321)
 or puer māior (minor) decem annīs (302)
 or puer plūs (minus) decem annōs nātus (303)

304. The ablātīvus sociātīvus

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. A Socrate ērudītus | <i>Educated by Socrates</i> |
| ā canibus laniātus | <i>torn by dogs</i> |
| ā nātūrā datum | <i>given by nature (personified)</i> |
| ab exercitū oppressus | <i>...by... (pers. collective subst.)</i> |
| 2. Eius impulsū | <i>At his instigation</i> |
| mōre, cōsuētūdine | <i>according to custom...</i> |
| īrā incēnsus | <i>in his anger</i> |
| inopiā adductus, coactus | <i>because of his want</i> |
| tīmōre perterritus | <i>out of fear</i> |
| nuntiō commōtus | <i>at this news</i> |

3. Rē, rē vērā
nōmine, speciē
meā sententiā
*In reality, in truth
by name, in appearance
in my opinion*
4. Quō-eō=quantō-tantō
the-the (with comparatives)
5. Cum virtūte }
=honestē } vīvere
live virtuously
- Note:* Cum, in the ablative of *manner*, is always omitted with modō, ratiōne, mente, mōre, iūre, lēge; usually also with other ablatives modified by adjectives:
- Magnā (cum) cūrā
eā condiōne, lēge
*very carefully
under this condition*
6. **Cum** patre abiit
cum febrī rediit
With = accompanied by.....
he returned with a fever
7. Fruī, ūtī, fungī rē
nītī; vēscī, potīrī rē
glōriārī, laetārī etc. rē
*See n. 212, pg. 102.
See n. 212-213.
See n. 283, 3, pg. 141*
8. Assuētus labōre
insuētus labōris
currū vehī, pedibus īre
proeliō vincere, superārī
pilā, tībīs lūdere
*Accustomed to toil
unused to hard work
ride, go on foot
conquer in, lose the battle
play ball, the flute*
9. **Afficio** tē honōre, dolōre
Afficiō tē praemiō, sepultūrā
*I honor you, cause you pain
I reward you, bury you*
10. Laude **dignus**
suā sorte **contentus**
virtūte **praeditus**
frētus, cōnfisus virtūte
*praiseworthy
satisfied with his lot
virtuous
relying upon his strength*

305. Ablātīvus et genetīvus **quālītātis**

(Used with attributes only)

- Homō humilī stātūra (est)
vīcus oppidī magnitūdine
*(he is) a man of low stature
a village the size of a city*

Note: Magnus, maximus, summus and tantus take either the gen. or the abl.:

- Vir magnī ingenīi }
vir magnō ingenīō }
a man of great talents

Note: The *genitive* is used to denote number and kind:

- Classis centum nāvium
fossa decem pedum (317)
ēius modī rēs
*a fleet of 100 ships
a trench ten feet wide (deep)
things of such a kind*

306. Ablātīvus absolūtus : Independent Ablative

The Ablative Absolute is an **ablative** connected **with a predicate** word (participle, substantive, adjective). As part of a sentence it denotes

time, cause, condition, concession, manner, means....

Dārēō rēgnante (=cum Dārē-
us rēgnāret,) hoc factum est (**when** *Darius was reigning...*
D. reigning,...; in the reign of...)

| | |
|---|--|
| dux urbe captā rediit (=cum urbs capta esset) | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; line-height: 1;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>after the city was taken... having taken the city, he..... after (the) taking (of) the c... he took the city and retur'd</i> </div> |
|---|--|

| | |
|---|--|
| tē auctōre (=cum tū auctor sīs) hōc faciam | } since you advise it... } upon your advice |
|---|--|

nūllō prohibente (= quod
nēmō prohibēbat) effūgit

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| tē invītō (=cum nōlīs) | (since you do not consent, |
| hōc nōn faciam |) I shall not do it |

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| tē invītō (= sī nōlīs) | <i>) if you should be displeased...</i> |
| hōc nōn faciam | <i>(against your wish...</i> |

| | |
|---|---|
| tē in vitō (=quamquam nōn vīs) hōc faciam | although you object, { <i>without your consent,</i> |
|---|---|

nūllō negōtiō (= facillimē)
id facere potuisti

*(you were able to do this
without any difficulty)*

lintribus iūctīs flūmen
trānsībant { *by tying together boats...
 { on a bridge of boats.....*

Note: This ablative is called *absolūtus*, because its noun and predicate word are “loosened” from all grammatical relation to any part of the sentence.

If, however, the noun and its predicate participle are grammatically related to a part of the sentence, they must be joined to it; thus the participle (adjective) becomes the

307. PARTICIPIUM CONIUNCTUM

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Invītus hōc fēcī (ego) | though unwilling , I did it |
| urbem captam cōservāvit | (after the city had been taken, he spared it |

| | |
|--|--|
| tuī absentis memor sum | <i>I am mindful of you</i> <i>(even when you are absent)</i> |
| cōgitantī mihi perbeātī illī vidērī solent | <i>they seem to me very</i> <i>happy, whenever I think...</i> |
| amicō praesente dēlector | <i>I delight in his presence</i> |
| urbem cēpī, captam dēlēvī | <i>I took the c. and (then) de-</i> <i>stroyed it</i> |

308. Translation of the participle **having** praised

The perfect participle active which is wanting in Latin, is expressed by *a*: the perfect participle of a deponent, *b*: the perfect participle passive (ablativus absolutus or participium coniunctum), *c*: secondary clauses:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <i>a.</i> caedem cōspicātī fūgērunt | <i>Having seen the slaughter,.....</i> |
| <i>b.</i> caede cōspectā fūgērunt | <i>when they had seen... they fled</i> |
| urbem captam dīripuit | <i>after taking the city he pl. it</i> |
| <i>c.</i> quī pugnāverant, rediērunt | <i>having fought ..., they returned</i> |
| eō postquam pervēnit (cum | <i>having arrived there.....</i> |
| pervēnisset, obsidēs poposcit) | <i>when he had arrived there...</i> |

Note: Being praised is similarly translated:

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| Quī obsidentur, dēspērant | <i>being besieged, they despaired..</i> |
|---------------------------|---|

RELATIONS OF SPACE

309. The question "**Where?**" is answered by **in** with the ablative:

Names of towns and small islands, however, take the bare genitives (locatives) -ae and -ī; in all other cases the bare ablative:

Nātus est

in Italiā, **in** Crētā, **in** Euboeā, **in** urbe, **in** castrīs;

Rōmae, Corīnthī, Cypri, Athēnīs, Carthāgine (or -ī);

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| in urbe Rōmā (Position!) | <i>in the city of Rome</i> |
| (in) ipsa Rōmā | <i>in Rome itself</i> |
| Rōmae, (in) urbe maximā | <i>in the great city of Rome</i> |
| Athēnīs in forō | <i>on the marketplace of Athens</i> |

310. Locus (in all meanings) and names of places with **tōtus** usually take the bare ablative:

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| hōc locō | <i>in this place</i> |
| (in) locō, suō locō | <i>at the right place or time</i> |
| tōtā urbe, tōtā Italiā | <i>in the whole city, throughout I.</i> |

311. Place and route being often considered as means or instruments, are expressed by the ablative:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <i>terrā marīque</i> | <i>on or by land and sea</i> |
| <i>terrā, marī</i> | <i>by land, by sea</i> |
| <i>castrīs sē tenēre</i> | <i>keep in camp</i> |
| <i>Appiā viā proficīscī</i> | <i>set out by the Appian road</i> |
| <i>portā introīre, ērumpere</i> | <i>enter by, break out of the gate</i> |
| <i>tēctō aliquem recipere</i> | <i>receive into one's home</i> |
| <i>domō aliquem invitāre</i> | <i>invite into one's house</i> |
| <i>rēctā viā</i> | <i>straightway, right on</i> |

312. Verbs of placing (exc. *imponere*) take **in** with the ablative:

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>pōnō, locō, collocō, }</i> <i>cōstituō tē in mūrō }</i> | <i>I place you on the wall</i> |
| <i>praesidium Romae collocō</i> | <i>I station the garrison in Rome</i> |
| <i>cōsistō; cōsīdō hīc</i> | <i>I place myself; sit down here</i> |
| <i>oculōs in terrā dēfīgō</i> | <i>fix my eyes upon the ground</i> |
| <i>studium in unā re cōsūmō</i> | <i>put my energy on one thing</i> |
| <i>in sapientibus numerātur</i> | <i>is reckoned among the wise m.</i> |
| <i>spem in Deō pōnō</i> | <i>place my hope in God</i> |
| <i>in statuā īnscrībō</i> | <i>make an inscription upon the statue</i> |

But *tibi lēgem impōnō, exercitum in nāvēs impōnō*

313. The question "Whence?" is answered by **ab, ex, dē**.

Names of towns and small islands, however, take the bare ablative:

Venit

ab *urbe* (*from*), **ex** *urbe* (*out of*), **dē** *coelō* (*from heaven*);
Rōmā, Corinthō, Cyprō, Athēnīs, Delphīs, Carthāgine.

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| ex urbe <i>Rōmā</i> (Position!) | <i>out of the city of Rome</i> |
| <i>Rōmā, ex urbe</i> <i>maximā</i> | <i>out of the great city of Rome</i> |
| <i>Rōmā ex forō</i> | <i>from the forum in (of) Rome</i> |

314. Latin "Whence?" corresponding to English

"Where?"

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <i>ā fronte, ā tergō</i> | in <i>front, behind</i> |
| <i>ab omnibus partibus</i> | on <i>all sides</i> |
| <i>ex utrāque parte</i> | at <i>each side</i> |
| <i>ā septentrionibus</i> | on <i>the north</i> |
| <i>ab Sēquanīs</i> | on <i>the side of the Sequani</i> |
| <i>ā milibus passuum tribus</i> | at <i>a distance of 3 miles</i> |
| <i>ex itinere</i> | <i>on the way</i> |

Hang, begin and side with

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| pendet ab , ex , in arbore | hangs (i.) on the tree |
| suspendō tē ab... | hang (tr.) you on ... |
| unde ordiar, incipiam? | where shall I begin ? |
| initium capit ā flumine | It begins at the river |
| Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontiis | it rises in the territory of |
| stāre ab aliquō | side with one |
| nāvem Rōmā cōnscendō | board the ship at Rome |
| Rōmā Kalendīs Iānuāriis | Rome, Jan. 1st (Date!) |

315. The question "**Whither?**" is answered by **in** with the accusative. Names of towns and small islands, however, take the bare accusative.

Proficiscitur

in Italiam, to Italy; **in urbem**, into the city;
Rōmam, Corinthum, Cyprum, Delphōs, Carthāginem

in urbem Rōmam (Position!) into the city of Rome
 Rōmam, (in) urbem maximam into the great city of Rome
 Rōmam, in Italiam to Rome in Italy

316.

Latin "**Whither?**" corresponding to English "**Where?**"

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Rōmam convēnimus | We assembled (i.) at Rome |
| in urbem, hūc pervēnī | I arrived in the city, here |
| ad Dēlum appellō (nāvem) | I land at Delos |
| Rōmam nuntiātum est | Intelligence was received at R. |
| sē abdunt in silvās } | they hide(themsv.) in the forest |
| sē (in) silvīs occultant } | |
| in silvīs abditī sunt | they are hidden in the forest |
| adventus in urbem | arrival in the city. |

317. How long, wide, deep, high, thick, large, far?

| | |
|--|----------------|
| Fossa ducentōs pedēs longa , | 200 feet long |
| fossa quīndecim pedēs lāta , | 15 feet wide |
| fossa quīndecim pedēs alta , | 15 feet deep |
| mūrus quīndecim pedēs altus , | 15 feet high |
| mūrus trium pēdum crassitūdine, | 3 feet thick |
| vīcus oppidī magnitūdine, | as large as... |
| triduū viam prōgressī sunt, | 3 days' march |
| vīcus mille passūs ā Rōmā } distat or } | 1 mile distant |
| vīcus mille passibus ā Rōmā } abest } | |
| rēx mille passūs ā Rōmā } cōnsēdit: | 1 mile from R. |
| rēx mille passibus ā Rōmā } | |

318.

Peculiarities

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| humī , humō, humī | <i>on, from, to the ground</i> |
| rūrī , rūre, rūs | <i>in, from, to the country</i> |
| domī , domō, domum | <i>at, from, (towards) home</i> |
| domī militiæque } domī bellique } | <i>in peace and in war</i> |
| in pāce, in bellō | <i>in peace, in war</i> |
| dom um revertimur | we return home |

Note: Domī, domō, domum take attributes denoting possession: domī aliēnae, Caesaris; domō meā; domum suam.

But = **In** novā domō *in a new building*

RELATIONS OF TIME

319. The question "**When?**" is answered, in general, by the bare ablative:

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| diē, nocte | <i>by day, by night</i> |
| interdiū or lūce, noctū | <i>by day, by night</i> |
| illō diē, illā nocte | <i>on that day, in that night</i> |
| posterō diē | <i>on the following day</i> |
| multō diē, multā nocte | <i>late in the day, late in the night</i> |
| vespere or vespērī | <i>in the evening</i> |
| prīmā lūce | <i>at daybreak</i> |
| māne | <i>in the morning</i> |
| hōrā decimā (107) | <i>at 10 o'clock</i> |
| meridiē | <i>at noon</i> |
| annō decimō | <i>in the year ten</i> |
| proximō annō | <i>last year, next year</i> |
| superiōre annō | <i>in the preceding year</i> |
| <hr/> | |
| vēre, aestate | <i>in spring, in summer</i> |
| autumnō, hieme | <i>in fall, in winter</i> |
| ineunte or prīmō vēre | <i>at the beginning of spring</i> |
| mediā, extrēmā hieme | <i>in the middle, at the end of winter</i> |
| ortū, occāsū sōlis | <i>at sunrise, at sunset</i> [ter |
| <hr/> | |
| comitiis | <i>at the election</i> |
| lūdis | <i>at the time of the games</i> |
| <hr/> | |
| antīquīs temporibus | <i>in ancient times</i> |
| temporibus Lycurgī | <i>at the time of Lycurgus</i> |
| patrum memoriā | <i>at the time of our fathers</i> |

| | |
|---|---------------------------|
| adventū meō | <i>at my arrival</i> |
| hōrum discessū = { cum discessissent } | <i>at their departure</i> |

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| prīmā pueritiā | <i>at the beginning of boyhood</i> |
| extrēmā pueritiā | <i>at the end of boyhood</i> |
| summā senectūte | <i>in extreme old age</i> |
| prīmō Pūnicō bellō | <i>in the first Punic war</i> |
| quārtō cōsulātū | <i>in his fourth consulship</i> |

| | |
|--|----------------------------|
| initiō, principiō | <i>at the beginning</i> |
| tempore, suō tempore ad tempus, ad diem | } <i>at the right time</i> |

Note: In some expressions, especially when time **and** circumstances are denoted, **in** with the ablative is required:

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| bis in diē | <i>twice a (i. e. every) year</i> |
| in eō tempore | <i>in this critical situation</i> |
| in senectūte | <i>in an old age (state)</i> |
| in summā senectūte | <i>in spite of old age</i> |
| in cōsulātū nostrō | <i>in my consulship (office)</i> |

320. How long before or after ?

| | |
|---|--|
| Paulō ante, multō post | <i>shortly before, long after</i> |
| decem annīs ante | } <i>ten years before</i> |
| ante decem annōs | |
| decimō annō ante | |
| decimō ante annō | |
| annō post, trienniō post | <i>one, three years after</i> |
| annō post Christum nātum | <i>one year after the b. of Christ</i> |
| annō ante quam nātus est | <i>a year before his birth</i> |
| prīdiē quam nātus est | <i>the day before his birth</i> |
| annō post quam nātus erat | <i>a year after his birth</i> |
| postridiē quam nātus erat | <i>the day after his birth</i> |

| | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| abhinc decem annōs his decem annīs decem annīs ante | } <i>ten years ago to-day</i> |
|---|-------------------------------|

321. Other relations of Time

(See Prepositions pg. 116 sqq.)

| | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ab or ex.....ad..... | from..... till..... |
| rem decem diēs differō | <i>put it off for ten days</i> |
| decem annōs rēgnāvit | <i>he reigned ten years</i> |
| intra or ante decimum annum | before the end of.... |
| trienniō id perficiēs | within three years.... |
| trienniō eō nōn vēnit | since three years..... |
| tertium iam diem abest | since three days..... |
| decem annōs nātus | ten years old |
| decem annōrum puer | |
| decimum annum agēs | <i>in his tenth year</i> |
| in diēs māior | <i>greater from day to day</i> |

322. QUESTIONS

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Quis, quī puer fēcīt? | <i>Who, which boy did it?</i> |
| Quid, ubi, quō modo? | <i>What? when? how?</i> |
| a. Nōne fēcistī? | <i>You did it, did you not?</i> |
| Fēcī; fēcī vērō. | <i>Yes; I did it.</i> |
| b. Num fēcistī? | <i>You did not do it, did you?</i> |
| Nōn fēcī. | <i>No.</i> |
| c. Sōlusne fēcistī? | <i>Did you do it alone?</i> |
| Sōlus. | <i>Yes.</i> |
| d. Tū revertī audēs? | <i>You dare to come back?</i> |

Note: **Yes** is often rendered by *ita est*; *sānē*; *certē*;

No is often rendered by *nōn ita*; *minimē* (*vērō*).

| | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| Utrum vērum est an falsum ? | } Is it true or false? |
| vērum (ne) est an falsum ? | |
| utrum vērum est an nōn ? | } Is it true or not? |
| vērum (ne) est an nōn ? | |

323. Indirect Questions

(Depending on verba interrogandī, sentiendī and dicendī, on interest and rēfert)

Multum interest **quis fēcerit**.

Quaerit velīsne (= **num** velīs) sibi respondēre.

Dīcam vērum (**ne**) **an** falsum **sit**.

dīcam utrum vērum **an** falsum sit.

dīcam utrum vērum sit **necne** } (...true or not).

dīcam vērum (**ne**) sit **necne** }

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

| A. | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Ab, a | 240, 300, 304, 314 |
| Abbreviated forms 202. | |
| Abdo..... | 282. 316 |
| Abeo..... | 234 |
| Abhinc | 320 |
| Abhorreo..... | 68. 300 |
| Abicio..... | 412. |
| Abigo..... | 321. |
| Ablative | 300 sqq. |
| — absolute | 306 |
| Abluo..... | 369. |
| Abnuo..... | 370. |
| Abstergeo..... | 88. |
| Abstineo..... | 50. 300 |
| Absum..... | 223, 225 |
| Abundantia , Abutor..... | subst. 65; adj. 86 517. |
| Ac, atque | 245 |
| Accedit..... | 585. |
| Accedo..... | 226. |
| Accendo..... | 334. 270 |
| Accent | 8, 127, 203 |
| Accerso..... | 142. |
| Accidit..... | 581. |
| Accio..... | 27. |
| Accipio..... | 403. |
| Accusative | 282 sqq. |
| — with Infinitive .. | 286 |
| Accuso..... | 288, 297 |
| Acuo..... | 356. |
| Ad | 241, 299 |
| Address, form of .. | 17, 22, 32 |
| Adeo, (verb)..... | 235, 283 |
| Adhibeo..... | 33. |
| Adimo..... | 305. 297 |
| Adipiscor..... | 523. |
| Adiuvo..... | 19. 283 |
| Adjectives, I - IId | 30 |
| IIId | 46 |
| — used as Subst... | 40, 51, 147 |
| Admoneo..... | 37. 297 |
| Adolesco..... | 434. |
| Adorior..... | 550. |
| Adsum..... | 223, 225, 298, 3 |
| Adulor..... | 534. |
| Advenio..... | 475. 316 |

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Adverbs | 92, 100, 114. 115 269 |
| Advesperascit..... | 564. |
| Aer | 72 |
| Aestimo..... | 284, 297, 9-10 |
| Aether | 72 |
| Affero..... | 229 |
| Afficio..... | 304 |
| Affligo..... | 179. |
| Aggredior..... | 518. |
| Agnosco..... | 429. |
| Ago..... | 319. |
| Agreement | 31, 271 sqq. |
| Aio..... | 593. |
| Algeo..... | 99. |
| Aliquis | 141 |
| Alius, aliud | 154, 155, 297, 5 |
| Allicio..... | 398. |
| Allido..... | 232. |
| Alo..... | 152. |
| Alter | 104, 154, 157 |
| Alteruter | 157 |
| Ambigo..... | 323. |
| Ambio..... | 235 |
| Ambo | 103, 152 |
| Amburo..... | 221. |
| Amicio..... | 481. |
| Amitto..... | 244. |
| Amplector..... | 511. |
| Amplius, more than | 303 |
| And | 245, 249 note; 307 |
| — also | 245 |
| — indeed | 245, 4 |
| — not | 245 |
| Ango..... | 353. |
| Animadverto..... | 349. |
| Annuo..... | 371. |
| Ante | 241, 320 |
| Antecedent | 133, 277 |
| Antecello..... | 294. |
| Antefero..... | 229 |
| Antepono..... | 149. |
| Antequam | 251 |
| Aperio..... | 458. |
| Apiece | 199 |
| Appareo..... | 61. |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|--|--------------|--|--------------------|
| Apparet573. | | Caleo 63. 270 | |
| Appellatives | 51, 276, 278 | Cano271. | |
| Appello265. 284 | | Capesso143. | |
| Appellor..... 280 | | Capio402. | |
| Appositives | 275 sqq. | Capitals | 1 |
| Aptus ad | 298 | Caput | 45 |
| Arbitror.....483. | | Cardinals | 102, 103, 108, 109 |
| Arceo 28. | | Careo 58. 300 | |
| Arcesso141. | | Caro | 41 |
| Ardeo..... 96. | | Carpo211. | |
| Arguo357. 288 | | Case | 16 |
| Arrideo 92. | | — Endings | 36, 37, 54, 57 |
| As160. 251, 273, 274, 280 | 284 296 | — Endings of adj. | 50, participles 52 |
| Ascendo338. | | Causap.120. 297, 4, 299 | |
| Aspergo205. | | Caveo112. | |
| Assentior.....544. 283 | | Cedo, say, give600. | |
| Assequor514. | | Cedo225. 300 | |
| Assuefacio407. 288, 5 270 | | Celo 285 | |
| Assuesco - consuesco 432, 270 | | Cenatus | 199 |
| Assuetus | 304, 8 | Censeo 45. | |
| Asyndeton | 245, 1 | Cerno128. | |
| Atque | 245 | Certe, certo | 96, e |
| —adeo 246, 2 | | Certio rem facio | 285 |
| At, atqui | 247 | Characters | 1 |
| Attendo278. | | Cieo 26. | |
| Attinet.....588. | | Cingo192. | |
| Attingo276. | | Circum —..... | 283 |
| Attributes | 275 sqq. | Circundo 12. 298, 5 | |
| Audeo..... 198 | | Circumsedeo.....118. 283 | |
| Audiens sum | 298 | Circumsisto.....292. 283 | |
| Aufero..... 229, 298, 3 | | Circumsto 14. 283 | |
| Aufugio417. | | Claudo227. | |
| Augeo 71. 270 | | Coalesco443. | |
| Aut (- aut) | 246, 250 | Coarguo358. | |
| Autem | 247 | Coemo304. | |
| Auxilior 298 | | Coepti590. | |
| Aveo..... 79. | | Coerceo 29. | |
| | | Cognosco428. | |
| | | Cogo324. 285, 5; 288, 5, 316 270 | |
| B. | | Collectiva | 14 |
| Being praised 308 | | Colligo314. | |
| Bibo288. | | Colloco 312 | |
| Blandior553. | | Colloquor509. | |
| Bos 68 | | Colo153. | |
| Both 103, 158 | | Comburo220. 270 | |
| By (means of) | 25, 304 | Committo245. | |
| C. | | Commonefacio 297 | |
| Caedo254. 270 | | Commoneo..... 297 | |
| Cado249. 270 | | Communia | 12 |
| Calefacio..... 203, 270 | | Como.....307. | |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

Pages 85 to 107

Sections

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------|-----------|----------------------------|------|--------------------|
| Comparative, decl. | 77 | | Contingit | 582. | |
| Comparison of adj. | 73, 83, 88 | | Contundo | 296. | |
| — of adverbs | 97 | | Convalesco | 441. | |
| Comperio | 273. | | Convenio | 476. | 283, 316 |
| Compleo | 25. | | Convenit | 579. | |
| Composition of words. | 253 | | Convinco | 330. | 270, 2 |
| Compungo | 274. | | Coquo | 168. | |
| Concido | 253, 256. | | Corrigo | 183. | |
| Concino | 272. | | Corrumpo | 332. | |
| Concoquo | 169. | | Credo | 283. | 298, 4 |
| Concupisco | 445. | | Creo | | 284 |
| Concutio | 399. | | Cresco | 426. | 270 |
| Conducit | 577. | | Cubo | 3. | |
| Conduco | 176. | | Cum, Preposition | | 240, 304 |
| Conecto | 207. | | — Position of | | 117, 132, 134 |
| Confero | 229, 270, 3 | | — Conjunction | | 251 |
| Conficio | 410. | 237, Note | — cumque | | 135, 163, 165, 168 |
| Confido | 198, 290 | | Cum — tum | | 250 |
| Confisus | | 304, 10 | Cunctor | 484. | |
| Confiteor | 501. | | Cupio | 388. | 288, 4 |
| Confligo | 181. | | Curro | 257. | |
| Confodio | 415. | | | | |
| Confringo | 327. | | | | |
| Confugio | 418. | | | | |
| Congredior | 519. | | | | |
| Congruo | 376. | | | | |
| Conjugation | | 169 sqq. | | | |
| Coniungo | 195. | | | | |
| Coniveo | 80. | | | | |
| Conjunctions | | 244 sqq. | | | |
| — coord. | | 245 sqq. | | | |
| — subord. | | :51 | | | |
| Conquiro | 139. | | | | |
| Conscribo | 210. | | | | |
| Consenesco | 438. | | | | |
| Consentio | 470. | | | | |
| Consequor | 515. | | | | |
| Consero | 133; 157. | | | | |
| Consido | 344. | 312 | | | |
| Consisto | 289. | 312, 270 | | | |
| Conspicio | 392. | | | | |
| Constat | 576. | | | | |
| Constituo | 365. | 312, 270 | | | |
| Consto | 16. | 247 | | | |
| Constructio ad sensum | | 279 | | | |
| Consuesco | 432. | | | | |
| Consulo | 156. | | | | |
| Contemno | 217. | | | | |
| Contendo | 279. | | | | |
| Conticesco | 439. | | | | |
| Contineo | 51. | | | | |

D.

| | | |
|--|------|-------------------|
| Damno | 297 | |
| Dates | 107 | |
| Dative | 298 | |
| — with Gerundive | 192 | |
| De | 240. | 299 |
| Dea | | 65 |
| Debeo | 35. | |
| Decerno | 129. | |
| Decerpo | 212. | |
| Decet | 565. | |
| Decipio | 404. | |
| Declensions | 20. | 27, 36, 53, 57 |
| — of adj. and part. | | 46 sqq. |
| — of defect. and abundantia | | 64 sqq. |
| — of Greek nouns | | 69 sqq. |
| Dedecet | 566. | |
| Dedisco | 420. | |
| Dedo | 284. | |
| Defectiva, nouns | | 60, 88, verbs 220 |
| Defendo | 341. | 300 |
| Defero | | 229 |
| Deficio | | 283 |
| Defleo | 23. | |
| Dego | 325. | |
| Degrees of Comparison | | 73, 91 |
| Deleo | 21. | |
| Deligo | 315. | 284 |
| Demergo | 201. | |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|--------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Demeto248. | | Do, laudi do..... 11. | 298, 7 |
| Demo.....308. | 298, 3 | Doceo..... 47. | 285 |
| Deponents | 193 sqq. | Doleo..... 59. | 283 |
| — passive of | 197 | Domi, domus | 55, 56, 318 |
| Deposco422. | | Domo (verb)..... 3. | |
| Deprehendo343. | | Dono 298, 5 | |
| Derigo184. | | Dubito..... 283, 4; 288 | |
| Derivation of words 253 | | Duco175. 208. | 284, 297 |
| Descendo.....339. | | Duo, decl. | 102, in cpds. 105 |
| Desero158. | | | E. |
| Desilio461. | | Each, apiece | 109 |
| Desino136. | | Ecquis | 145 |
| Desisto 290. | | Edo, give out.....285. | |
| Despero mihi | 283 | Edo, eat 227 | |
| Desum..... | 223, 225 | Educo, lead forth...177. | 300 |
| Deterreo 44. | 300 | Effero..... | 229, 270, 3 |
| Detineo 53. | | Effloresco.....436. | |
| Detondeo.....109. | | Effugio te..... | 283 |
| Detraho 298, 3 | | Egeo 64. | |
| Deus | 33, 66 | Eius | 120, 122, 124 297, 6, 298, 6 |
| Devertor 198 | | Elicio.....355. | |
| Diaeresis | 4, 5 and 6 | Eludo.....234. | |
| Dicas, diceres | 280 | Emergo203. | |
| Dico170. | 298, 7, b | Emineo..... 66. | |
| Dicor 296, 3 | | Emo.....303. | 297 |
| Differo 229 | | Enclitics, que, ve, ne | 8, 243 |
| Diffido.....198 | | Enim | 245, 248 |
| Diffindo.....300. | | En, verb | 232, 304 |
| Digero219. | 270, 2 | Eo, adverb | 163 |
| Dignus | 304, 10 | Ergo | 249 |
| Diligo.....316. | | Eripio 298, 3 | |
| Dimico 8. | | Esurio..... 482. | |
| Dimitto246. | | Et (— et) | 245, 250 |
| Dirigo = 'derigo'.....184. | | — in numerals | 105 |
| Dirimo306. | | — with adjectives | 245, 4 |
| Diripio.....391. | | Etenim | 248 |
| Diruo374. | | Etiam | 91, 245 |
| Dis | 300 | Evado241. | |
| Disco419. | | Evanesco.....452. | |
| Disiungo 196. | | Evenio, evenit583. | |
| Displiceo 40. | | Everto350. | |
| Dissentio471. | | Exardesco.....442. | |
| Dissero159. | | Excello295. | |
| Distineo 54. | | Excolo154. | |
| Distinguo381. | | Excudo340. | |
| Disto 17. | | Exerceo30, 31. | |
| Distributives | 104, 109 | Existimor 296, 3 | |
| — replaced by card. | 109, note | Expedi578. | |
| — used as cardinals | 109, b | Expergiscor525. | |
| Divido230. | | | |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|---------------------------------------|----------|---|----------|
| Exterior.....545. | | Fugio.....416 | |
| Explodo.....236. | | Fugit.....571. | |
| Expono.....150. | | Fulcio.....463. | |
| Exprimo.....223. | | Fulgeo.....100. | |
| Exstinguo.....282. | | Fulget.....558. | |
| Exsulto.....283 | | Fundo.....333. | |
| Extendo.....280. | | Fungor.....506. | |
| Extollo.....229 | | Furo.....354. | |
| Extremus86, 274, c | | Future Imperative204 | |
| Exuo.....361. | | G. | |
| F. | | Gaudeo.....198, 283, 3, 4; 288 | |
| Facere, accent in cpds.8 | | Gemo.....165. | |
| Facio.....406. 284, e | | Genders, how determined, 11. | |
| Fallit.....570. | | —general rules.....12 | |
| Fallo.....261, | | —particular rules.....26, 34, 38, 56, 59 | |
| Familia65 | | Genitive297, 276, 4; 119 | |
| Fando audio.....590. | | Gero.....218 284. a | |
| Fateor.....500. | | Gerundive192 | |
| Faveo.....113. | | Gigno.....147. | |
| Perio.....480. | | Glorior.....485. 283 | |
| Fero.....228, 238 | | Gratis297 | |
| Fertur, feruntur.....296 | | Gratulor.....486. | |
| Fido.....198 | | Greek words69 sqq. | |
| Figo.....200. | | Grus68 | |
| Filia, filius65, 32 | | H. | |
| Findo.....299. 270, 4 | | Habeo.....32. | |
| Fingo.....197. | | —have (as).....284, b; 298, 6 | |
| Finitum verbum169 sqq. | | —regard as.....284, c; 280, 2 | |
| Fio.....237 | | Habeor.....280, 297, 9 | |
| —with nom.....280, 2 | | Haereo.....97. | |
| —with gen.....297, 6 | | Haurio.....468. | |
| —with abl.....237 | | Have, ave.....519. | |
| First88, 273 | | Having praised308 | |
| Fit.....580. | | Hic (pron.)126; (adv.) 163 | |
| Flagito.....285 | | High86. 87. 317 | |
| Flecto.....206. | | How long, wide, deep etc.320 | |
| Fleo.....22. | | Humi, humus34. 318 | |
| Floreo.....67 | | I. | |
| Fluo.....285 | | I.....4, 10 and 11 | |
| Fodio.....414 | | Iaceo.....69. | |
| For (pro, ut)240, 274 | | Iacio and compounds.....411; 4, 11 | |
| —and against.....298, 1 | | Id aetatis283 | |
| Fore.....221, 289, Note | | Idoneus ad298, 1 | |
| Foveo.....114. | | Igitur249 | |
| Fractions108 | | Ignosco.....430. | |
| Frango.....326. | | Ille126, 276. 3 and 4 | |
| Fremo.....164. | | Illic, accent of127 | |
| Fretus304, 10 | | | |
| Frigeo.....82. | | | |
| Fruor.....504. | | | |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|---|----------|-------------------------------------|----------|
| Illicio396. | | Intueor498. | |
| Imbuo360. | | Invado240. | |
| Imitor te 283 | | Invenio477. | |
| Inimineo 82. | | Inveterasco433. | |
| Impendeo111. | | Invideo.....123. 298, 2 | |
| Impendo269. | | Ipse 129, 130 b | |
| Imperative 179, 203, 204 | | Irascor526. | |
| Imperator 276 | | Irrepo.....215. | |
| Impersonal verbs .. 214 | | Irrideo..... 93. | |
| Impersonal expressions 287 | | Is, ea, id 120, 245, 4 | |
| Impertior540. | | Iste 126, 127, Note 1 | |
| Impono151. 312 | | Itaque 249 | |
| In 239, 309, 312, 315-319 | | Iubeo..... 89. 288. 2 290 | |
| Incendo335. 270 | | Iubeor 296, 3 | |
| Inchoatives, page 98 | | Iugurum 66. b | |
| Incido, fall into.....250. | | Iungo194. | |
| Incido, cut into.....255. 312 | | Iuppiter 68 | |
| Incipio590. 314 | | Iuratus.....199. | |
| Includo228. | | Iuro290. | |
| Incolo.....155. | | Iussu..... 64 | |
| Increpo 5. | | Iuvat.....569. | |
| Incumbo145. | | Iuvo 18. 283 | |
| Indeclinables 12, 44, 60 | | L. | |
| Indefinite pronouns 141 sqq. | | Labor507. | |
| — subject 280 | | Lacesso144. | |
| Indigeo 65. | | Laedo.....231. | |
| Indignor 288 | | Laetor 283 | |
| Indirect questions 323, 288 | | Lamentor 283 | |
| Iudulgeo101. | | Largior.....535. | |
| Induo362. | | Last 86, 88, 89, 273 | |
| Ineo 235 | | Lateo 70. | |
| Infero 229 | | Laudi do 298, 7 | |
| Infimus 86, 274, c. | | Lavo..... 20. | |
| Infinite(ly) 106 | | Lego311. | |
| Infinitive, meaning of 289 | | Libero 300 | |
| Ingravesco453. | | Libet.....567. | |
| Inquam.....594. | | Liceor.....493. | |
| Inscribo..... 312 | | Licet.....568. | |
| Insculpo214. 312 | | Like 274 | |
| Insero.....134. 160 | | Liquet574. | |
| Insimulo 288 | | Locative 55, 309, 318 | |
| Insuetus 304, 8 | | Loco (verb)312. | |
| Insum 223, 225 | | Loco, as 274 | |
| Intellego317. | | Locus 66 | |
| Intercludo.....229. | | Longe with superlative 91 | |
| Intereo 234 | | Longius, more than 303 | |
| Interest589. 297, 11 | | Loquor.....508. | |
| Interjections 252 | | Luceo103. | |
| intersum 223, 225 | | Lucescit, lucet 563, 562. | |
| Intransitive verbs 205, note; 218, 270 | | | |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 197 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| Ludo233. | 304 | Multo, by far | 91, 320 |
| Lugeo104. | 283, 3 | Multus, declined... | 85 |
| Luo367, 368. | | N. | |
| M. | | Nam, namque | 248 |
| Maereo 83. | 283, 3 | Nanciscor524. | |
| Magis | 81, 98. 99 | Nascor..... 529. | |
| Magnam partem ... | 283, 6 | Natu | 64 |
| Magni, magno | 297, 9 and 10 | Natus | 303 |
| Maior | 90, 303 | Ne, lest | 141, 251 |
| Malo..... | 230, 288 | Necessarius ad | 298, 1 |
| Maneo 98. | 280 | Necesse est | 287 |
| Maturesco450. | | Neglego318. | |
| Maxime | 81, 98, 99 | Nego..... | 294 |
| Medeor502. | 298, 2 | Nemo | 146, 147 |
| Medius | 274 | Neo | 24. |
| Memini591. | 297 | Nequeo | 236 |
| Mentior536. | | Ne- quidem | 245 |
| Mereor..... | 198 | Nescio.....456. | |
| Metior547. | | Neuter, pronunc. etc. | 4, 154, 146, 157 |
| - met | 121 | Neuter pronouns as objects | 283, 285 |
| Meto.....247. | | Nihil | 146, 283, 6 |
| Metuo377. | | Ningit561. | |
| Meus | 32, 122, 297, 6, 11; 298, 6 | Niteo..... 71. | |
| Mico 7. | | Nitor.....510. | |
| Milia, decl. | 102 | Noceo 38. | |
| Millesimus, millies | 106 | Noli | 231 |
| Minitor. minor, 487, 488. | 290 | Nolo | 230, 288, 294 |
| Minor, comparative | 90, 303 | Nominative | 280 |
| Minoris, minimi ... | 297, 9 and 10 | - with Infinitive .. | 296 |
| Minuo363. | 270 | Nomine | 274 |
| Minus, less than ... | 303 | Non | 250 |
| Mirror..... | 283, 3 | Nosco427. | |
| Misceo 48. | | Nouns, classes of .. | 9 |
| Miseret555. | | Nubo.....208. | 298. 2 |
| Misereor495. | | Nudo..... | 300 |
| Miseror46. | | Nullus | 146, 154 |
| Mitto243. | 298, 7 | Num | 322, 323 |
| Mobilia | 13 | Num quis | 145 |
| Modo (-modo), etc. | 250 | Numerals | 100 sqq. |
| Molior537. | | Numero (abl.) | 274 |
| Molo.....162. | | Nuntio..... | 316 |
| Months, names of | 51 | O. | |
| Mordeo.....105. | | Obdormisco446. | |
| More, most | 74, 91, 97, 98 | Obduresco.....449. | |
| Morior520. | | Obeo..... | 235 |
| Moror489. | | Oblino.....132. | 270, 4 |
| Moveo115. | 301 | Obliviscor.....527. | 297 |
| Multiplication Table | 112 | Obmutesco451. | |
| Multo (verb) | 297 | Obruo.....375. | 197 |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| Obsideo120. | | Paulo | 91, 320 |
| Obsoleo.....435. | | Paulum | 97, b |
| Obsum | 223, 225 | Pellicio | 397. |
| Obtineo.....55. | | Pello.....264. | |
| Obtrecto..... | 298. 2 | Pendeo.....110. | 314, 270 |
| Obtundo..... | 297. | Pendo..... | 268. |
| Occido.....251 253. 270 | | People, indefinite subject | 280 |
| O'clock | 107 | Per-, per | 91, 241; 274 c |
| Odi | 592. | Perago..... | 320. |
| Offero | 229 | Percello | 293. |
| Old | 90. 321 | Percrebresco | 448. |
| Oleo | 72. | Percutio..... | 400. |
| Omnes | 152 | Perdo..... | 234 |
| One, impersonal... | 280 | Pereo..... | 234 |
| Opem ferre | 298 | Perfruo | 505. |
| Operio.....459. 270, 4 | | Pergo | 186. |
| Opitulus | 490. | Perhorresco..... | 437. |
| Oportet..... | 556, 287, Note | Periphrastic Conjugation | 191 |
| Opperior | 546. 270, 4 | Perlego..... | 313. |
| Opprimo..... | 224. | Permulseo | 90. |
| Optimus quisque... | 149 | Pepetio..... | 522. |
| Ordinals | 104, 107 | Persolvo..... | 379. |
| Ordior | 548. 314 | Persuadeo | 95. 283, 4; 298, 2 |
| Orior..... | 549. 314 | Pertimesco | 440. |
| Oro..... | 285 | Pertineo | 52. |
| Or rather | 246 | Pervenio | 478. 316 |
| Os, bone; os, mouth | 44 | Peto | 137. |
| Ostendo..... | 281. | Phonetic changes... | 268 |
| P. | | Phonology | 1 |
| Paciscor..... | 198 | Piget..... | 552. |
| Paenitet | 551. | Pingo..... | 198. |
| Pando | 347. | Placeo | 39. |
| Par | 36 | Placet | 586. |
| Parco | 263. 298, 2 | Plaudo | 235. |
| Pareo..... | 60. 298, 3; 270, 4 | Plebs | 67 |
| Pario..... | 401. 270, 4 | Plerique | 85 d |
| Parisyllables | 36, 37 | Pluit..... | 560. |
| Participium coniunctum | 307 | Pluralia tantum | 62, 63, 109, 158 |
| Participles declined | 51, 52 | Pluris, plurimi | 297, 9 and 10 |
| Particles, classes of | 9 | Plus, more than | 303 |
| Partior..... | 539. | Poema | 72 |
| Parvi, parvo | 297, 9 and 10 | Polleo..... | 84. |
| Pasco, pascor | 424, 425. | Polliceor..... | 494. 280 |
| Passive of Deponents | 197 | Polysyndeton | 245 |
| Passive Participles | 199, 200 | Pono..... | 148. 312 |
| Patefacio | 408. 270 | Porrigo..... | 185. |
| Pateo..... | 73. 270 | Posco | 421. 285, 4 |
| Patet..... | 575. | Position of Prepositions | 242 |
| Pator..... | 521. 288 | —of —que, —ve, —ne | 243 |
| | | —of Attributes..... | 276 |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| Possideo121. | 270, 4 |
| Possido345. | 270, 4 |
| Possum | 226, 283, 4; 290 |
| Post | 241, 320 |
| Potior541. | |
| Poto, potus | 1. 199 |
| Praebeo..... | 36. 284 |
| Praedico173. | |
| Praeditus | 304, 10 |
| Praefero | 229 |
| Praestat587. | |
| Praesto..... | 15. 284, 281 |
| Praesum | 223, 225 |
| Praeter | 283 |
| Praetereo..... | 235 |
| Praeterit572. | |
| Praising attributes | 276 |
| Prandeo, pransus 125. | 199 |
| Precor491. | |
| Predicate (nouns).. | 271, 280, 2 |
| Prehendo.....342. | |
| Premo222. | |
| Prepositions | 238 sqq. |
| Primo, primum | 115 |
| Primus | 273, 274 |
| Principal Parts | 177 |
| Pro | 240, 274, 284 |
| Pro nihilo | 297, 9 |
| Prodeo | 234 |
| Proficiscor530. | |
| Prohibeo..... 34. | 288, 5; 300 |
| Proicio.....413. | |
| Proinde .. | 248 |
| Promo309. | |
| Pronominal adjunct. | 154, 155 |
| Pronominal advbs. | 163-168 |
| Pronouns | 116 sqq. |
| Pronunciation | 3, 4 |
| Prosterno127. | |
| Prosum | 223, 225 |
| Provideo124. | 298 |
| - pte | 175 |
| Pudet553. | |
| Pungo273. | |
| Purpose, how expressed, | 299 |
| Puto284. | 294, 297, 9 |
| Putor | 280, 296, 3 |

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| Q. | |
| Qua, Correlatives.. | 163 |
| Quaero.....138. | 285 |
| Quaeso.....596. | |
| Qualis | 160 |
| Quam | 91, 167, 303, 251 |
| - diu, Correl. etc. .. | 165, 251 |
| Quando, Correl. | 165 |
| Quant, quanto | 297, 9 and 10, 304 |
| Quantity of Syll. | |
| and Vowels | 7 |
| - que, Accent, | |
| Position etc | 8, 243, 255, 2 |
| Queo..... | 236 |
| Queror512. | 283, 3 |
| Questions | 322, 323 |
| Qui, Relative.. | 132, 299 |
| - Interrog. Indef. | 137, 140, 141 |
| Quiesco431. | |
| Quis | 136, 141, 160 |
| Quisque | 149, 152 |
| Quo, Correlatives.. | 163 |
| Quo — eo | 304, 4 |
| Quoque | 245 |
| Quod, Correlatives | 160 |
| Conjunction | 251, 288, 3 |
| Quotus quisque ... | 149 |

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| R. | |
| Rado.....237. | |
| Rapio390. | |
| Rather | 76, 246 |
| Recido252. | |
| Recordor..... | 297, 12 |
| Recurro259. | |
| Redarguo359. | |
| Reddo287. | 284 |
| Redeo234 | |
| Refello.....262. | |
| Refercio462. | |
| Refero | 229 |
| Refert557. | 297 |
| Reflexive | 116, 124, 130, 270 |
| Rego.....182. | |
| Relinquo.....328. | 298, 7 |
| Reminiscor528. | 297, 12 |
| Reor503. | |
| Repello267. | |
| Reperio472. | |
| Reposco423. | 285, 4 |
| Repuerasco454. | |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|---|----------|--|----------|
| Resisto.....291. | | Sono 9. | |
| Rescindo302. | | Sortior542. | |
| Respondeo107 | | Spargo204. | |
| Respuo.....372. | | Sperno130. | |
| Restat.....584. | | Spero 290 | |
| Reticeo..... 42. | | Splendeo 85. | |
| Retineo 56. | | Spondeo106. | |
| Retundo298. | | Statuo364. | |
| Revertor 198 | | Stem 19 | |
| Revivisco.....444. | | Sterno126. | |
| Rideo 91. 283 | | Sto 13. 297, 314 | |
| Rodo.....238. | | Strepto166. | |
| Rogo..... 285 | | Stringo.....199. | |
| Rules of Gender ... 11, 12. 26, 34 | | Struo386. | |
| | 56, 59 | Studeo 75. 283, 4; 298, 2 | |
| Rumpo, ruo...331, 373. | | Stupeo 76. 270, 1 | |
| Rus, rure, ruri 318 | | Suadeo 94. | |
| S. | | Subigo322 | |
| Saepio464. | | Subject 280, 286 | |
| Salio460. | | Subjunctive of | |
| Salve.....597. | | Future 192 | |
| Sancio465. | | Subvenio479. 298, 3 | |
| Sapio.....389. | | Succendo.....336. | |
| Sarcio466. | | Succurro 260. 298, 3 | |
| Satis with genitive 297 | | Sum, auxil. and | |
| Scalpo.....213. | | independent 280, 281 | |
| Scando337. | | — with Genitive : 97, 6 | |
| Scindo301. | | with Dative 298, 7 | |
| Scio460. | | Summus 86, 274 | |
| Scisco447. | | Sumo310. | |
| Scribo.....209. | | Supersedere119. 300 | |
| Se 300 | | Supines 184, 299, f. | |
| Seco 6. | | Supplico 298 | |
| Sed 247 | | Surgo187. | |
| Sedeo117. | | Suscenseo 46. | |
| Self 130 | | Suscipio405. | |
| Semideponents ... 198 | | Suspendo.....270. 270, 1 | |
| Sentio469. | | Suspicio, suspicor...393. 270, 2 | |
| Separation of Syl- | | Sustineo 57. | |
| lables 6 | | Suus 124 | |
| Sepelio457. | | Syllables 5 | |
| Sequor513. 283 | | T. | |
| Sero132, 157. | | Taceo 41. | |
| Serpo216. | | Taedet554. | |
| Sescenti 106 | | Tam 167 | |
| Sileo 74. | | Tamquam 274, a | |
| Similis 297, 3 | | Tango275. | |
| Sino, sinor135. 288, 2; 296, 3 | | Tanti, quanti 297, 9 and 10 | |
| Sis 231 | | Tego188. | |
| Soleo..... 198 | | Tendo.....277. | |
| Solve378. | | Teneo 49. | |
| | | Tero140. | |

Index to Principal Parts and Syntax

| Pages 85 to 107 | Sections | Pages 85 to 107 | Sections |
|---|----------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| Terreo..... 43. | | V. | |
| Texo.....161. | | Vaco 301 | |
| Therefore 249 | | Vacuefacio409. | |
| They, indef. subj. 280 | | Vado242. | |
| Timeo 77. 298, 4 | | Valeo, vale..... 62. 551. 283, 4 | |
| Tingo193. | | Veho, vehor ...190; 191. 304 | |
| Tollo..... 229 | | Vel 91, 246, 250 | |
| Tonat559. | | Velim 288 | |
| Tondeo.....108. | | Vello351. | |
| Tono..... 10. | | Vendo, veneo..... 234, 297 | |
| Too 74, 94, 97 | | Venio 474. 298, 7 | |
| Torqueo 87. | | Venit in mentem ... 297, 12 | |
| Trado286. | | Verbs 169 sqq. | |
| Traditur, traduntur 296 | | Verbum finitum ... 169 | |
| Traho.....189. | | Vere, vero 96, e | |
| Trans - 283, 2 | | Vereor499. | |
| Transeo 235 | | Vergo.....355. | |
| Transitive 205, 270, 282, 283 | | Versor492. | |
| Transport 285 | | Verto348. 298, 7 | |
| Tremo167. | | Very 74, 91, 97 | |
| Tribuo366. | 228, 7 | Vescor532. | |
| Trini, uni 110, 111 | | Veto..... 4. 288, 2; 290, 294 | |
| Trudo239. | | Vetor 296. 3 | |
| Tueor.....497. 300 | | Video, videor.....122. 280, 2, 296 | |
| U. | | Vigeo 78. | |
| Ubi, Correlatives .. 163 | | Vincio467. | |
| Ulcisor531. | | Vinco329. 304, 270, 4 | |
| Ullus 146, 154 | | Viso352. | |
| Unde, Correlatives 163 | | Vivo..... 38. 270, 4 | |
| Ungo, unguo ...283 284. | | Vocative 32 | |
| Uni 110, 111, 154 | | Voco..... 284 | |
| Unus, decl., ...in cpds 102, 105, 154 | | Volo, velle 230, 231, 288, 290 | |
| Urbs 276, 309, 313, 315 | | Volvo..... 380. | |
| Urgeo102. | | Vomo.163. | |
| Ut, Correlatives ... 167 | | Voveo.....116. | |
| — Conjunction 251, 274,a; 299 | | W. | |
| Uter, uterque etc. .. 138, 150, 157, 158 | | When etc. 319 sqq. | |
| Utilis ad 298, 1 | | Where, Whither | |
| Utor516. | | etc 309 sqq. | |

Corrigenda

| Page | Line | Read | instead of |
|------|---------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 10 | 6 from below | with | or |
| 67 | 3 “ “ | ūrum | ūsūm |
| 93 | 18 “ “ | cēcīnī | cecīnī |
| 128 | 15 “ “ | quam diū | quam diu |
| 128 | 2 “ “ | sī, quandōquidem | si, quandoquidem |
| 129 | 5 “ “ | nē | ne |
| 159 | 16 from above | <i>in (his etc.) old age</i> | <i>in an old age</i> |
| 160 | 8 “ “ | <i>since two days</i> | <i>since three days</i> |



AUG 24 1906



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 263 3

